# Course notes for PMATH 990 

Christa Hawthorne<br>Lectures by Vern Paulsen, Fall 2015

## Contents

1 Preliminaries ..... 2
1.1 Determinants ..... 4
1.1.1 Laplace expansion ..... 4
1.1.2 Permutations ..... 4
1.1.3 Cramer's rule and the adjugate ..... 5
1.2 Row-reduced echelon forms and elementary matrices ..... 6
1.3 Rank ..... 7
1.4 Submatrices ..... 8
1.5 Sums of subspaces ..... 8
1.6 Partitioned matrices ..... 9
1.7 Euclidean norms and inner products ..... 10
1.8 Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization process ..... 11
1.9 Lowden orthogonalization ..... 11
2 Eigenvalues, eigenvectors, and spectra ..... 12
2.1 The characteristic polynomial ..... 13
2.2 The elementary symmetric functions ..... 14
2.3 Moments and Newton's identities ..... 17
2.4 Right multiplication ..... 17
2.5 Similarity ..... 18
2.6 Persistence of eigenvalues ..... 23
3 Unitaries and isometries ..... 24
3.1 Householder transformations ..... 29
3.2 Unitary equivalence ..... 30
3.3 Specht's invariants ..... 31
4 Linear maps on matrices ..... 37
5 QR factorization and Gram-Schmidt ..... 39
6 Normal and Hermitian ..... 40
6.1 Hermitian matrices ..... 42
6.2 Majorization ..... 53
7 Positive semidefinite ..... 55
7.1 Factorization and decomposition ..... 59
7.1.1 Cholesky factorization ..... 60
7.2 Subspaces, orthogonal complements, and projections ..... 62
7.3 Gram matrices ..... 63
7.4 Polar form and singular valued decomposition ..... 64
7.5 Schur products ..... 67
7.6 The positive semidefinite ordering ..... 68
8 Matrix norms ..... 69
8.1 Power series ..... 72
8.2 Gersgorin disks ..... 73
9 Non-negative matrices ..... 76
9.1 Irreducible non-negative matrices ..... 83
9.2 Stochastic and doubly stochastic matrices ..... 85
10 Matroids ..... 87

## 1 Preliminaries

Vern Paulsen, MC5318, vpaulsen@uwaterloo.ca
To get in touch: send email, and set up a time. After seminars are decided, he'll post office hours.
Recommended book: Matrix Analysis, Horn and Johnson
Outline:

- General matrix theory
- Unitary equivalence, similarity
- QR factorization, which we'll use to prove Jordan canonical form
- Cholesky factorization, Specht invariants
- Partitioned matrices
- Special families
- Hermitian, normal, unitary, positive semidefinite, non-negative matrices
- Circulant matrices
- Majorization
- Eigenvalue interlacing theorems
- Estimates about eigenvalues of sums of Hermitian matrices

Weekly homework assignments of 5-10 problems. (Probably closer to 5.) A bit of discussion is okay, but the proofs should not all be identical. (He'll clarify as time goes on.)

| Linear algebra | Matrix analysis |
| :--- | :--- |
| General fields | $\mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$ |
| Rings and modules | Limits, continuity, power series |
| Basis independent | Basis dependent |
|  | Inner products, geometry |

Assume you know:

- Fields
- Basic properties of $\mathbb{R}$ and $\mathbb{C}$
- General theory of vector spaces (bases, dimension, matrix of a linear map, determinants and their computations, matrix inverses, etc.)
- Analysis: sequences and series, Heine-Borel

We use $\mathbb{F}$ to denote $\mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$. We use $\mathbb{F}^{m}$ to denote the vector space of $m$-tuples over $\mathbb{F}$. The canonical basis of $\mathbb{F}^{m}$ is $e_{i}=(0, \ldots, 0,1,0, \ldots, 0)$ with a 1 in the $i^{\text {th }}$ position. So

$$
v=\sum_{i=1}^{m} x_{i} e_{i}
$$

Dot product is given by, for $v=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right), w=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)$, we have

$$
v \cdot w=x_{1} y_{1}+\cdots+x_{m} y_{m}
$$

The inner product is given by

$$
\langle v, w\rangle=x_{1} \overline{y_{1}}+\cdots+x_{m} \overline{y_{m}}
$$

When $\mathbb{F}=\mathbb{R}$, they coincide.
We use $M_{m, n}$ to denote the set of $m \times n$ matrices. If we need to specify, we will write $M_{m, n}(\mathbb{R})$ or $M_{m, n}(\mathbb{C})$. In particular, for $A \in M_{m, n}$, we write

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
a_{11} & \ldots & a_{1 n} \\
\vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
a_{m 1} & \ldots & a_{m n}
\end{array}\right)=\left(a_{i, j}\right)
$$

This forms a vector space in the natural way: $M_{m, n} \cong \mathbb{F}^{m n}$. By the canonical basis for $M_{m, n}$, we mean the matrices $E_{i, j}$ containing a 1 in the $(i, j)$ entry and a 0 elsewhere.

Every $A \in M_{m, n}$ defines a linear map $L_{A}: \mathbb{F}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{m}$ given by

$$
L_{A}\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)\right)=\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{1 j} x_{j}, \ldots, \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{m j} x_{j}\right)
$$

For $A \in M_{m, n}, A=\left(a_{i j}\right)$, then $\bar{A}=\left(\overline{a_{i j}}\right) \in M_{m, n}$. Also $A^{t}=\left(a_{j i}\right) \in M_{n, m}$. Also $A^{*}=\overline{A^{t}}=\bar{A}^{t}$ is the adjoint or conjugate transpose.

Suppose $A \in M_{m, p}, B \in M_{p, n}$. Define their product to be $\left(c_{i j}\right) \in M_{m, n}$ given by

$$
c_{i j}=\sum_{k=1}^{p} a_{i k} b_{k j}
$$

Remark 1.

1. $(A B) C=A(B C)$
2. $\left(A_{1}+A_{2}\right) B=A_{1} B+A_{2} B$
3. $A\left(B_{1}+B_{2}\right)=A B_{1}+A B_{2}$
4. $\lambda(A B)=(\lambda A) B=A(\lambda B)$
5. Using the association $\mathbb{F}^{m} \cong M_{m, 1}$, we have $L_{A}(v)=A v$.
6. Using the association $\mathbb{F}^{m} \cong M_{m, 1}$, we have $v \cdot w=w^{t} v$ and $\langle v, w\rangle=w^{*} v$.

Remark 2.

1. If we write $A=\left[C_{1}|\cdots| C_{n}\right]$ for $C_{i} \in M_{m, 1}$, and if $v=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$, then

$$
L_{A}(v)=L_{A}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} x_{j} e_{j}\right)=\sum_{j=1}^{n} x_{j} L_{A}\left(e_{j}\right) \cong \sum_{j=1}^{n} x_{j} C_{j}
$$

2. Thus range $\left(L_{A}\right) \cong \operatorname{span}\left(C_{1}, \ldots, C_{n}\right)$.

Remark 3. For $A \in M_{m, p}, B \in M_{p, n}$, we have

1. Writing

$$
\begin{gathered}
A=\left(\begin{array}{c}
R_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\vdots \\
R_{m}
\end{array}\right) \\
B=\left[C_{1}|\cdots| C_{n}\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

Then $A B=\left(R_{i} C_{j}\right)$.
2. $A B=\left[A \cdot C_{1}|\cdots| A \cdot C_{n}\right]$
3. Writing

$$
\begin{array}{r}
A=\left[W_{1}|\cdots| W_{p}\right] \\
B=\left(\begin{array}{c}
V_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\vdots \\
V_{p}
\end{array}\right)
\end{array}
$$

For $W_{k} \in \mathbb{F}^{m} \cong M_{m, 1}, V_{k} \in \mathbb{F}^{n} \cong M_{1, n}$. Then

$$
A B=\sum_{k=1}^{p} w_{k} \cdot v_{k}
$$

called the "outer product".
Notation 4. We write $M_{m}$ for $M_{m, m}$.

### 1.1 Determinants

### 1.1.1 Laplace expansion

For $A \in M_{n}$, we put $\operatorname{det}(A) \in \mathbb{F}$. Let $A_{i, j} \in M_{n-1}$ be obtained by eliminating the $i$ th row and $j$ th column. The Laplace expansion is then given by

$$
\operatorname{det}(A)=\sum_{j=1}^{n}(-1)^{i+j} a_{i, j} \operatorname{det}\left(A_{i, j}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n}(-1)^{i+j} a_{i, j} \operatorname{det}\left(A_{i, j}\right)
$$

for any choice of $i, j$ respectively.

### 1.1.2 Permutations

$\sigma:\{1, \ldots, n\} \rightarrow\{1, \ldots, n\}$ bijective. The sign of a permutation: find a way to express $\sigma$ as a product of transpositions. The parity modulo 2 of the number of transpositions turns out to be independent of the expression. We set

$$
\operatorname{sgn}(\sigma)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { the parity is even } \\ -1 & \text { else }\end{cases}
$$

i.e. $(-1)^{k}$ where $k$ is the number of transpositions. We can then write

$$
\operatorname{det}(A)=\sum_{\sigma \in S_{n}} \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma) \prod_{i=1}^{n} a_{i, \sigma(i)}
$$

We also define the permanent of a matrix $A$ is

$$
\operatorname{perm}(A)=\sum_{\sigma \in S_{n}} \prod_{i=1}^{n} a_{i, \sigma(i)}
$$

This has applications in graph theory, order statistic, symmetric tensor products. In particular,

$$
\left\langle x_{1} \vee \cdots \vee x_{n}, y_{1} \vee \cdots \vee y_{n}\right\rangle=\operatorname{perm}\left(\left\langle x_{i}, y_{j}\right\rangle\right)
$$

## Proposition 5.

1. $\operatorname{det}\left(A^{t}\right)=\operatorname{det}(A)$
2. $\operatorname{det}(A B)=\operatorname{det}(A) \operatorname{det}(B)$
3. $A$ is invertible if and only if $\operatorname{det}(A) \neq 0$

Definition 6. Suppose $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{n}, W$ are vector spaces over $\mathbb{F}$. Then
is multilinear if it satisfies

1. for all $j$, all $v_{j}, v_{j}^{\prime} \in V_{j}$, we have

$$
L\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{j-1}, v_{j}+v_{j}^{\prime}, v_{j+1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)=L\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{j-1}, v_{j}, v_{j+1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)+L\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{j-1}, v_{j}^{\prime}, v_{j+1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)
$$

2. for all $j$, all $v_{j} \in V_{j}$, and all $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$, we have

$$
L\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{j-1}, \lambda v_{j}, v_{j+1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)=\lambda L\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{j-1}, v_{j}, v_{j+1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)
$$

If we regard matrices as tuples $\left[C_{1}|\ldots,| C_{n}\right]$ with $C_{1}, \ldots, C_{n} \in \mathbb{F}^{n}$, then
satisfies

1. det is multilinear
2. If $B$ is obtained from $A$ by transposing two columns then $\operatorname{det}(B)=(-1) \operatorname{det}(A)$ (alternation)
3. $\operatorname{det}\left(I_{n}\right)=1$ (normalization)

Theorem 7. If
is alternating, multilinear, and normalized, then

$$
L\left(C_{1}, \ldots, C_{n}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(\left[C_{1}|\cdots| C_{n}\right]\right)
$$

A similar result holds for rows.

### 1.1.3 Cramer's rule and the adjugate

Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then $A_{i, j} \in M_{n-1}$, as above. Let

$$
b_{i, j}=(-1)^{i+j} \operatorname{det}\left(A_{j, i}\right)
$$

Then $B=\left(b_{i, j}\right) \in M_{n}$ is called the adjugate of $A$.
Theorem 8 (Cramer). $B A=A B=\operatorname{det}(A) I$.

### 1.2 Row-reduced echelon forms and elementary matrices

Definition 9. Suppose $B \in M_{m, n}$. We say $B$ is in RREF if

1. The first non-zero entry in each row is 1 . (These are called leading ones.)
2. The first non-zero entry of the $(i+1)$ th row is to the right of the first non-zero entry of the $i$ th row.
3. All other entries in a column with a leading one are zero.
4. Rows of all zeroes are at the bottom.

Example 10.

$$
\left(\begin{array}{llllll}
0 & 1 & * & 0 & * & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & * & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

is in RREF.
Definition 11. If we omit Item 3, we get the definition of row echelon form.
Definition 12. The elementary operations are:
Type I Row interchange
Type II Multiply a row by a scalar
Type III Add a multiple of a row to another row
Theorem 13. Given $A \in M_{m, n}$, there is a sequence of elementary operations to perform on $A$ yielding $B$ in RREF. Moreover, this $B$ is unique. The process $A \rightarrow B$ is referred to as Gauss-Jordan elimination. The process of reducing to something in REF is referred to ass Gaussian elimination.

Proof. See Hoffman and Kunze.Theorem 13

Definition 14. The elementary matrices are
Type 1 For $k \neq \ell$, let

$$
U(k, \ell)=\sum_{i \neq k, \ell} E_{i, i}+E_{k, \ell}+E_{\ell, k}
$$

Then $U(k, \ell)^{-1}=U(k, \ell)=U(\ell, k)$, and $U(k, \ell) A$ corresponds to interchanging the $k$ and $\ell$ row of $A$.
Type 2 For $\lambda \neq 0$, let

$$
D(k, \lambda)=\sum_{i \neq k} E_{i i}+\lambda E_{k k}
$$

Then $D(k, \lambda)^{-1}=D\left(k, \lambda^{01}\right)$ and $D(k, \lambda) A$ corresponds to scaling row $k$ by $\lambda$.
Type 3 For $k \neq \ell$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$, let

$$
S(k, \ell, \lambda)=I+\lambda E_{\ell, k}
$$

Then $S(k, \ell, \lambda)^{-1}=S(k, \ell,-\lambda)$ and $S(k, \ell, \lambda) A$ corresponds to adding the $k$ row of $A$, scaled by $\lambda$, to the $\ell$ row of $A$.

Corollary 15. Given $A \in M_{m, n}$, there is $W \in M_{m}$ that is a product of elementary matrices such that $W A$ is in RREF; furthermore, this $W$ is unique.

Remark 16. If $W A=B$ as above, then $W$ is invertible, and $A=W^{-1} B$ where $W^{-1}$ is also a product of elementary matrices.

### 1.3 Rank

Definition 17. For $A \in M_{m, n}$, we define the column rank of $A$, denoted $\operatorname{rank}_{c}(A)$ is the dimension of the subspace of $\mathbb{F}^{m}$ spanned by the columns. The row rank, denoted $\operatorname{rank}_{r}(A)$, is the dimension of the subspace of $\mathbb{F}^{n}$ spanned by the rows.

Theorem 18. Let $A \in M_{m, n}$; let $B$ be the RREF of $A$. Then

1. $\operatorname{rank}_{r}(A)=\operatorname{rank}_{r}(B)$
2. $\operatorname{rank}_{c}(A)=\operatorname{rank}_{c}(B)$
3. $\operatorname{rank}_{r}(B)=\operatorname{rank}_{c}(B)$ are both equal to the number of leading $1 s$ in $B$.

Corollary 19. $\operatorname{rank}_{c}(A)=\operatorname{rank}_{r}(A)$, and we henceforth refer to it as $\operatorname{rank}(A)$.
Definition 20. Let $L: V \rightarrow W$ be linear. We define the range of $L$ by

$$
\mathcal{R}(L)=\{L(v): v \in V\}
$$

Then $\mathcal{R}(L)$ is a subspace, since $L$ is linear.
Proof of Theorem 18.

1. Recall $B=W A$ where $W$ is a product of elementary matrices. Thus each row of $B$ is a linear combination of rows of $B$. Thus

$$
\operatorname{rank}_{r}(B)=\operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{span}(\operatorname{rows} \text { of } B)) \leq \operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{span}(\operatorname{rows} \text { of } A))=\operatorname{rank}_{r}(A)
$$

But we can apply the same argument to $A=W^{-1} B$ to get $\operatorname{rank}_{r}(B) \geq \operatorname{rank}_{r}(A)$. Thus $\operatorname{rank}_{r}(A)=$ $\operatorname{rank}_{r}(B)$.
2. Look at $L_{A}, L_{B}: \mathbb{F}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{m}$. Write

$$
A=\left[C_{1}|\ldots| C_{n}\right]
$$

Then

$$
A\left(\begin{array}{c}
\lambda_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\lambda_{n}
\end{array}\right)=\lambda_{1} C_{1}+\cdots+\lambda_{n} C_{n}
$$

Thus $\mathcal{R}\left(L_{A}\right)=\operatorname{span}\left\{C_{1}, \ldots, C_{n}\right\}$. But $B=W A$; so $\mathcal{R}(B)=\mathcal{R}(W A)=W(\mathcal{R}(A))$. But $W$ is invertible; so we get

$$
\operatorname{rank}_{c}(B)=\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{R}(B))=\operatorname{dim}(W(\mathcal{R}(A)))=\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{R}(A))=\operatorname{rank}_{c}(A)
$$

3. Picture

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{llllllllll}
0 & \ldots & 0 & 1 & * & * & 0 & * & * & 0 \\
0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & * & * & 0 \\
0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

The columns for leading 1's span the column space and are linearly independent. Thus the dimension of the column space of $B$ is just the number of leading 1 's.
The non-zero rows are exactly the rows with leading 1's; these thus span the row space. Furthermore, since each column containing a leading 1 has exactly one non-zero entry, we have that the rows with leading 1's are independent. So they form a basis, and the dimension of the row space is the number of leading 1's.

Remark 21. In general it holds that the rows of $C D$ are linear combinations of the rows of $D$.

### 1.4 Submatrices

Definition 22. Suppose $A \in M_{m, n}$. Suppose

$$
\begin{aligned}
\alpha & =\left\{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{k}\right\} \\
\beta & =\left\{\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{j}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

with

$$
1 \leq \alpha_{1}<\cdots<\alpha_{k} \leq m
$$

and

$$
1 \leq \beta_{1}<\cdots<\beta_{j} \leq n
$$

We define $A[\alpha, \beta] \in M_{k, j}$ by

$$
A[\alpha, \beta]=\left(a_{\alpha_{i}, \beta_{j}}\right)
$$

(where $A=\left(a_{i j}\right)$ ). These are the submatrices of $A$.
Any matrix of the form $A[\alpha, \alpha]$ is said to be a principal submatrix of $A$.
For $|\alpha|=|\beta|$, we call $\operatorname{det}(A[\alpha, \beta])$ a minor of $A$.
When $\alpha=\{1, \ldots, k\}$, then $A[\alpha, \alpha]$ is called a leading principal submatrix.
When $n=m$ and $\alpha=\{k, k+1, \ldots, n\}$, then $A[\alpha, \alpha]$ is a trailing principal submatrix.
The determinant of a leading or trailing principal submatrix is called a leading or trailing principal minor, respectively.

### 1.5 Sums of subspaces

Suppose $V, W$ are vector spaces. Consider their Cartesian product $V \times W$. We can regard it as a vector space by taking

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(v_{1}, w_{1}\right)+\left(v_{2}, w_{2}\right) & =\left(v_{1}+v_{2}, w_{1}+w_{2}\right) \\
\lambda\left(v_{1}, w_{1}\right) & =\left(\lambda v_{1}, \lambda w_{1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

This is denoted $V \oplus W$ and is called the direct sum of $V$ and $W$.
Proposition 23. If $\left\{v_{\alpha}: \alpha \in A\right\}$ is a basis for $V,\left\{w_{\beta}: \beta \in B\right\}$ is a basis for $W$ (neither necessarily finite), then

$$
\left\{\left(v_{\alpha}, 0\right): \alpha \in A\right\} \cup\left\{\left(0, w_{\beta}\right): \beta \in B\right\}
$$

is a basis for $V \oplus W$. Thus $\operatorname{dim}(V \oplus W)=\operatorname{dim}(V) \oplus \operatorname{dim}(W)$.
Proof. Suppose $(v, w) \in V \oplus W$. Write

$$
\begin{aligned}
v & =\sum_{\alpha} \lambda_{\alpha} v_{\alpha} \\
w & =\sum_{\beta} \mu_{\beta} w_{\beta}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

$$
(v, w)=\sum_{\alpha} \lambda_{\alpha}\left(v_{\alpha}, 0\right)+\sum_{\beta} \mu_{\beta}\left(0, w_{\beta}\right)
$$

Suppose

$$
\sum_{\alpha} \lambda_{\alpha}\left(v_{\alpha}, 0\right)+\sum_{\beta} \mu_{\beta}\left(0, w_{\beta}\right)=0
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\alpha} \lambda_{\alpha} v_{\alpha} & =0 \\
\sum_{\beta} \mu_{\beta} w_{\beta} & =0
\end{aligned}
$$

and thus each $\lambda_{\alpha}$ and $\mu_{\beta}$ is 0 .Proposition 23

Example 24. $\mathbb{F}^{m} \oplus \mathbb{F}^{p}$ contains vectors of the form

$$
\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right),\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{p}\right)\right) \approx\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{p}\right) \in \mathbb{F}^{m+p}
$$

This yields an isomorphism $\mathbb{F}^{m} \oplus \mathbb{F}^{p} \cong \mathbb{F}^{m+p}$.
Conversely, given $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}, x_{m+1}, \ldots, x_{m+p}\right) \in \mathbb{F}^{m+p}$, we can partition it after the $x_{m}$, and regard it as an element of $\mathbb{F}^{m} \oplus \mathbb{F}^{p}$.

### 1.6 Partitioned matrices

Suppose $A \in M_{m_{1}+m_{2}, n_{1}+n_{2}}$. We can then define $A_{i j} \in M_{m_{i}, n_{j}}$ in the natural way. These can be regarded as

$$
A_{i j}: \mathbb{F}^{n_{j}} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{m_{i}}
$$

Recall that $A$ can be regarded as

$$
A: \mathbb{F}^{n_{1}+n_{2}} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{m_{1}+m_{2}}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
A\left(\begin{array}{c}
x_{1} \\
\vdots \\
x_{n_{1}} \\
x_{n_{1}+1} \\
\vdots \\
x_{n_{1}+n_{2}}
\end{array}\right)=\binom{A_{11} x+A_{12} y}{A_{21} x+A_{22} y} \\
\mathbb{F}^{n_{1}+n_{2}} \xrightarrow{A} \mathbb{F}^{m_{1}+m_{2}} \\
\downarrow \cong \\
\mathbb{F}^{n_{1}} \oplus \mathbb{F}^{n_{2}} \longrightarrow \mathbb{F}^{m_{1}} \oplus \mathbb{F}^{m_{2}}
\end{gathered}
$$

where the bottom map is given by

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
A_{11} & A_{12} \\
A_{21} & A_{22}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Check: for $A \in M_{m_{1}+m_{2}, p_{1}+p_{2}}, B \in M_{p_{1}+p_{2}, n_{1}+n_{2}}$, if

$$
\begin{aligned}
A & =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
A_{11} & A_{12} \\
A_{21} & A_{22}
\end{array}\right) \\
B & =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
B_{11} & B_{12} \\
B_{21} & B_{22}
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

where $A_{i, j} \in M_{m_{i}, p_{j}}$ and $B_{i, j} \in M_{p_{i}, n_{j}}$, then

$$
A B=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
A_{11} B_{11}+A_{12} B_{21} & A_{11} B_{12}+A_{12} B_{22} \\
A_{21} B_{11}+A_{22} B_{21} & A_{21} B_{12}+A_{22} B_{22}
\end{array}\right)
$$

On the assignment, we may assume we never deal with $1 \times 1$ matrices. We may use anything asserted in class.

Definition 25. If we say $A \in M_{m_{1}+\cdots+m_{k}, n_{1}+\cdots+n_{k}}$ is partitioned, we mean that we can partition $A$ as $A_{i, j} \in M_{m_{i}, n_{j}}$. We say $A$ is block-diagonal to mean $A_{i, j}=0$ for $i \neq j$.
Proposition 26. Suppose $A \in M_{n_{1}+\cdots+n_{k}, n_{1}+\cdots+n_{k}}$ is block-diagona. Then

$$
\operatorname{det}(A)=\operatorname{det}\left(A_{11}\right) \ldots \operatorname{det}\left(A_{n n}\right)
$$

Proof. Expand by Laplace.Proposition 26

Suppose

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
a & b \\
c & d
\end{array}\right)
$$

for $a \neq 0$. Recall that

$$
\operatorname{det}(A)=a d-b c=a\left(d-b a^{-1} c\right)
$$

Proposition 27. Suppose $A \in M_{n_{1}+n_{2}, n_{1}+n_{2}}$. If $A_{11}$ is invertible, then

$$
\operatorname{det}(A)=\operatorname{det}\left(A_{11}\right) \operatorname{det}\left(A_{22}-A_{21} A_{11}^{-1} A_{12}\right)
$$

If $A_{22}$ is invertible, then

$$
\operatorname{det}(A)=\operatorname{det}\left(A_{22}\right) \operatorname{det}\left(A_{11}-A_{12} A_{22}^{-1} A_{21}\right)
$$

Proof.

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
A_{11} & A_{12} \\
A_{21} & A_{22}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A_{11} & 0 \\
A_{21} & I_{n_{2}}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I_{n_{1}} & A_{11}^{-1} A_{12} \\
0 & A_{22}-A_{21} A_{11}^{-1} A_{12}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and thus

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
A_{11} & A_{12} \\
A_{21} & A_{22}
\end{array}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A_{11} & 0 \\
A_{21} & I_{n_{2}}
\end{array}\right) \operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I_{n_{1}} & A_{11}^{-1} A_{12} \\
0 & A_{22}-A_{21} A_{11}^{-1} A_{12}
\end{array}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(A_{11}\right) \operatorname{det}\left(A_{22}-A_{21} A_{11}^{-1} A_{12}\right)
$$

by taking the Laplace expansion along the identity matrices. Proof of the second fact is similar, using the factorization

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
A_{11} & A_{12} \\
A_{21} & A_{22}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I_{n_{1}} & A_{12} \\
0 & A_{22}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A_{11}-A_{12} A_{22}^{-1} A_{21} & 0 \\
A_{22}^{-1} A_{21} & I_{n_{2}}
\end{array}\right)
$$

### 1.7 Euclidean norms and inner products

Suppose $x, y \in \mathbb{F}^{n}$ with

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)^{c} \\
& y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)^{c}
\end{aligned}
$$

we set

$$
\langle x, y\rangle=x_{1} \overline{y_{1}}+\cdots+x_{n} \overline{y_{n}}
$$

Remark 28. $\langle\cdot, \cdot\rangle: \mathbb{C}^{n} \times \mathbb{C}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle x+x^{\prime}, y\right\rangle & =\langle x, y\rangle+\left\langle x^{\prime}, y\right\rangle \\
\left\langle x, y+y^{\prime}\right\rangle & =\langle x, y\rangle+\left\langle x, y^{\prime}\right\rangle \\
\langle\lambda x, y\rangle & =\lambda\langle x, y\rangle \\
\langle x, \lambda y\rangle & =\bar{\lambda}\langle x, y\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

i.e. $\langle\cdot, \cdot\rangle$ is sesquilinear.

Remark 29. In the case $\mathbb{F}=\mathbb{R}$, we have $\langle\cdot, \cdot\rangle$ is bilinear.
Definition 30. Suppose $x, y \in \mathbb{F}^{n}$. We say $x$ and $y$ are orthogonal (written $x \perp y$ ) when $\langle x, y\rangle=0$.
Definition 31. Suppose $x \in \mathbb{F}^{n}$. We define the Euclidean 2-norm of $x$ to be

$$
\|x\|_{2}=\langle x, x\rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}
$$

Theorem 32 (Cauchy-Schwarz inequality). $|\langle x, y\rangle| \leq\|x\|_{2}\|y\|_{2}$.

Proof. Well

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & \leq\langle t \exp (i \theta) x+y, t \exp (i \theta) x+y\rangle \\
& =t^{2}\langle x, x\rangle+t \exp (i \theta)\langle x, y\rangle+t \exp (-i \theta)\langle y, x\rangle+\langle y, y\rangle \\
& =t^{2}\|x\|_{2}^{2}+2 t|\langle x, y\rangle|+\|y\|_{2}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

thus the discriminant is non-positive, and

$$
4|\langle x, y\rangle|^{2}-4\|x\|_{2}^{2}\|y\|_{2}^{2} \leq 0
$$

Theorem 33 (Triangle inequality). $\|x+y\|_{2} \leq\|x\|_{2}+\|y\|_{2}$.
Proof. Well,

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & \leq\|x+y\|_{2}^{2} \\
& =\langle x+y, x+y\rangle \\
& =\langle x, x\rangle+\langle x, y\rangle+\langle y, x\rangle+\langle y, y\rangle \\
& \leq\|x\|_{2}^{2}+2\|x\|_{2}\|y\|_{2}+\|y\|_{2}^{2} \\
& =\left(\|x\|_{2}+\|y\|_{2}\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Fact 34. $\|\lambda x\|_{2}=|\lambda|\|x\|_{2}$.

### 1.8 Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization process

Definition 35. A set $S$ is orthonormal (o.n.) if it satisfies the following:

- For all $u \in S$ we have $\|u\|_{2}=1$
- For all $u \neq v$ in $S$, we have $u \perp v$

Given independent $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right\} \subseteq \mathbb{F}^{n}$, Gram-Schmidt yields orthonormal $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}\right\} \subseteq \mathbb{F}^{n}$ such that

$$
\operatorname{span} u_{1}, \ldots, u_{k}=\operatorname{span} x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}
$$

for all $1 \leq k \leq n$. In particular, we set

$$
\begin{aligned}
u_{1} & =\frac{x_{1}}{\left\|x_{1}\right\|_{2}} \\
u_{n+1} & =\frac{x_{n+1}-\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left\langle x_{n+1}, u_{i}\right\rangle u_{i}}{\left\|x_{n+1}-\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left\langle x_{n+1}, u_{i}\right\rangle u_{i}\right\|_{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

It's not hard to see that the $u_{i}$ satisfy the desired properties.

### 1.9 Lowden orthogonalization

Gram-Schmidt is numerically unstable; an alternative is Lowden orthogonalization.
Given independent $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right\} \subseteq \mathbb{F}^{m}$, consider

$$
\inf \left\{\sum_{j=1}^{m}\left\|x_{j}-u_{j}\right\|_{2}^{2}:\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}\right\} \text { orthonormal }\right\}
$$

Theorem 36 (Lowden). There is a unique orthonormal $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}\right\}$ attaining this infimum.
Theorem 37. This unique set $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}\right\}$ is called the Lowden orthogonalization of $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right\}$.
Here marks the end of the review.

## 2 Eigenvalues, eigenvectors, and spectra

Definition 38. Suppose $S$ is a linear map. Define the nullspace or kernel of $S$ to be

$$
\mathcal{N}(S)=\{x: S x=0\}
$$

Proposition 39. Suppose $S \in M_{n}$. Then the following are equivalent:

1. There is $T$ such that $S T=T S=I_{n}$
2. $\operatorname{det}(S) \neq 0$
3. $L_{S}: \mathbb{F}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{n}$ is injective
4. $L_{S}: \mathbb{F}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{n}$ is surjective

Proof.
(1) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (2) Cramer's rule.
$\mathbf{( 1 )} \Longrightarrow \mathbf{( 3 )}$ Assume $S$ is not injective. Then $\mathcal{N}(S) \neq 0$. Thus there is $x \neq 0$ such that $S x=0$; thus $T S \neq I$.
$\mathbf{( 3 )} \Longleftrightarrow(4)$ By the rank-nullity theorem: that

$$
\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{R}(S))+\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{N}(S))=n
$$

(3) $\Longrightarrow(1)$ By $((3) \Longleftrightarrow(4))$, we have $S$ is bijective, and is thus invertible.

We let $M_{n}^{-1}=\left\{S \in M_{n}: S\right.$ invertible $\}$.
Definition 40. Suppose $A \in M_{n}, x \in \mathbb{C}^{n}, x \neq 0$, and $A x=\lambda x$. We call such an $x$ an eigenvector, and we call such a $\lambda$ an eigenvalue. The spectrum of $A$, denoted $\sigma(A)$, is the set of all eigenvalues of $A$. The spectral radius of $A$ is

$$
\rho(A)=\sup \{|\lambda|: \lambda \in \sigma(A)\}
$$

Proposition 41. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then

$$
\sigma(A)=\left\{\lambda:(A-\lambda I) \notin M_{n}^{-1}\right\}
$$

Proof. $(A-\lambda I)$ is not invertible if and only if $\mathcal{N}(A-\lambda I) \neq\{0\}$, which holds if and only if there is a non-zero $x$ such that $A x=\lambda x$. Proposition 41

Given $A \in M_{n}, p(t)=a_{k} t^{k}+\cdots+a_{1} t+a_{0}$, we can define

$$
p(A)=a_{k} A^{k}+\cdots+a_{1} A+a_{0} I
$$

Remark 42. $(p q)(A)=p(A) q(A)$.
Theorem 43 (Spectral mapping theorem). Suppose $A \in M_{n}, p$ a polynomial. Then

$$
\sigma(p(A))=\{p(\lambda): \lambda \in \sigma(A)\}=p(\sigma(A))
$$

Proof. $\supseteq$ Let $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$. Then there is $x \neq 0$ such that $A x=\lambda x$. We then have that $A^{j} x=\lambda^{j} x$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(a_{k} A^{k}+\cdots+a_{1} A+a_{0} I\right) x & =\left(a_{k} \lambda^{k}+\cdots+a_{1} \lambda+a_{0}\right) x \\
& =p(\lambda) x
\end{aligned}
$$

so $p(A) x=p(\lambda) x$, and $p(\lambda) \in \sigma(p(A))$.
$\subseteq$ Suppose $\mu \in \sigma(p(A))$. Then there is $x \neq 0$ such that $p(A) x=\mu x$. Let

$$
q(t)=p(t)-\mu=a_{k} \prod_{j=1}^{k}\left(t-\mu_{j}\right)
$$

Then

$$
q(A)=a_{k}\left(A-\mu_{1} I\right) \ldots\left(A-\mu_{k} I\right)
$$

and

$$
p(A)-\mu I=q(A)=a_{k}\left(A-\mu_{1} I\right) \ldots\left(A-\mu_{k} I\right)
$$

But $p(A)-\mu I$ is not invertible because $\mu \in \sigma(p(A))$. So there is some $j_{0}$ such that $A-\mu_{j_{0}}$ is not invertible, and thus $\mu_{j_{0}} \in \sigma(A)$. Thus

$$
p\left(\mu_{j_{0}}\right)-\mu=q\left(\mu_{j_{0}}\right)=0
$$

and thus

$$
\mu=p\left(\mu_{j_{0}}\right) \in\{p(\lambda): \lambda \in \sigma(A)\}
$$

### 2.1 The characteristic polynomial

Definition 44. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then the characteristic polynomial of $A$ is

$$
p_{A}(t)=\operatorname{det}(t I-A)
$$

which is then monic of degree $n$.
Proposition 45. $\lambda \in \sigma(A) \Longleftrightarrow p_{A}(\lambda)=0$.
Proof.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda \in \sigma(A) & \Longleftrightarrow \lambda I-A \text { is singular } \\
& \Longleftrightarrow \operatorname{det}(\lambda I-A)=0 \\
& \Longleftrightarrow p_{A}(\lambda)=0
\end{aligned}
$$Proposition 45

Note that $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$ if and only if $\mathcal{N}(A-\lambda I) \neq\{0\}$. This space is called the eigenspace for $\lambda$.
Definition 46. For $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$, the geometric multiplicity of $\lambda$ is the dimension of $\mathcal{N}(A-\lambda I)$. The algebraic multiplicity of $\lambda$ is the number of times $(t-\lambda)$ is a factor of $p_{A}(t)$.

Example 47.

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\lambda & 1 \\
0 & \lambda
\end{array}\right)
$$

has geometric multiplicity 1 , but

$$
\operatorname{det}(t I-A)=(t-\lambda)^{2}
$$

so it has algebraic multiplicity 2 .
Proposition 48. Suppose $A \in M_{n}, \lambda \in \sigma(A)$. Then the geometric multiplicity of $\lambda$ is no more than the algebraic multiplicity of $\lambda$.

Remark 49. If $B=\left(b_{i j}\right)$, then $b_{i, j}=\left\langle B e_{j}, e_{i}\right\rangle$.

Proof of Proposition 48. Let $k$ be the geometric multiplicity of $\lambda$. Pick $v_{1}, \ldots, v_{k}$ a basis for $\mathcal{N}(\lambda I-A)$. Extend to a basis $\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$. Let

$$
S=\left[v_{1}|\cdots| v_{n}\right] \in M_{n}
$$

Then $\mathcal{R}(S)=\operatorname{span}\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}=\mathbb{C}^{n}$, so $S$ is surjective, and thus invertible. Let $B=S^{-1} A S$. For $1 \leq j \leq k$, and for $1 \leq i \leq n$, note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
b_{i, j} & =\left\langle S^{-1} A S e_{j}, e_{i}\right\rangle \\
& =\left\langle S^{-1} A v_{j}, e_{j}\right\rangle \\
& =\left\langle S^{-1}\left(\lambda v_{j}\right), e_{i}\right\rangle \\
& =\lambda\left\langle e_{j}, e_{i}\right\rangle \\
& = \begin{cases}\lambda & i=j \\
0 & \text { else }\end{cases}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{cccc|c}
\lambda & 0 & \ldots & 0 & B_{12} \\
0 & \lambda & \ldots & 0 & \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \\
0 & 0 & \ldots & \lambda & \\
\hline & & & & \\
0 & & & & B_{22}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then

$$
p_{B}(t)=(t-\lambda)^{k} \operatorname{det}\left(t I-B_{22}\right)
$$

so $(t-\lambda)^{k}$ divides $p_{B}(t)$. But

$$
p_{B}(t)=\operatorname{det}(t I-B)=\operatorname{det}\left(S^{-1}(t I-A) S\right)=\operatorname{det}(t I-A)=p_{A}(t)
$$

So $(t-\lambda)^{k}$ divides $p_{A}(t)$, and the algebraic multiplicity is at least the geometric multiplicity.
Proposition 48

### 2.2 The elementary symmetric functions

Observe that

$$
\left(t-\lambda_{1}\right) \ldots\left(t-\lambda_{n}\right)=t^{n}-\left(\lambda_{1}+\cdots+\lambda_{n}\right) t^{n-1}+\left(\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2}+\lambda_{1} \lambda_{3}+\cdots+\lambda_{n-1} \lambda_{n}\right)+\cdots+(-1)^{n} \lambda_{1} \ldots \lambda_{n}
$$

Definition 50. Given $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $1 \leq k \leq n$, we define the $k^{\text {th }}$ elementary symmetric function by

$$
S_{k}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)=\sum_{1 \leq i_{1}<i_{2}<\cdots<i_{k} \leq n} \prod_{j=1}^{k} \lambda_{i_{j}}
$$

Example 51.

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{1}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) & =\lambda_{1}+\cdots+\lambda_{n} \\
S_{2}\left(\lambda_{2}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) & =\sum_{1 \leq i<j \leq n} \lambda_{i} \lambda_{j} \\
& \vdots \\
S_{n}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) & =\lambda_{1} \ldots \lambda_{n}
\end{aligned}
$$

Fact 52.

$$
\left(t-\lambda_{1}\right) \ldots\left(t-\lambda_{n}\right)=\sum_{k=0}^{n}(-1)^{k} S_{k}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) t^{n-k}
$$

Definition 53. Let $A \in M_{n}$. Let

$$
E_{k}(A)=\sum_{J \subseteq\{1, \ldots, n\},|J|=k} \operatorname{det}(A(J, J))
$$

i.e. $E_{k}(A)$ is the sum of all the $k \times k$ principal minors of $A$.

Definition 54. For $A \in M_{n}$, we define the trace of $A$ to be

$$
\operatorname{tr}(A)=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{j j}
$$

Example 55. $E_{1}(A)=\operatorname{tr}(A)$ and $E_{n}(A)=\operatorname{det}(A)$.
Theorem 56. Let $A \in M_{n}$. Let $\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$ be the roots of $p_{A}(t)$ repeated according to their algebraic multiplicity. Then for $1 \leq k \leq n$, we have $E_{k}(A)=S_{k}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$.
Corollary 57. $\left\{E_{1}(A), \ldots, E_{n}(A)\right\}$ uniquely determines the roots of $p_{A}(t)$.
Notation 58. Given $f:(a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$, we can write $f(t)=f_{1}(t)+i f_{2}(t)$ for $f_{i}:(a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. We say $f$ is differentiable at $t$ if $f_{1}, f_{2}$ are differentiable at $t$, and we write $f^{\prime}(t)=f_{1}^{\prime}(t)+i f_{2}^{\prime}(t)$.

Notation 59. For $f:(a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{n}$, we write

$$
f=\left(\begin{array}{c}
f_{1} \\
\vdots \\
f_{n}
\end{array}\right)
$$

is differentiable at $t$ if $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n}$ are differentiable at $t$. In this case, we write

$$
f^{\prime}(t)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
f_{1}^{\prime}(t) \\
\vdots \\
f_{n}^{\prime}(t)
\end{array}\right)
$$

Remark 60.

$$
\left(f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n}\right)^{\prime}=f_{1}^{\prime} f_{2} \ldots f_{n}+f_{1} f_{2}^{\prime} \ldots f_{n}+\cdots+f_{1} \ldots f_{n-1} f_{n}^{\prime}
$$

Theorem 61. Let

$$
f_{j}=\left(\begin{array}{c}
f_{i j} \\
\vdots \\
f_{n j}
\end{array}\right):(a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{n}
$$

for $1 \leq j \leq n$. Assume each $f_{i j}$ is differentiable at $t$ for $a<t<b$. Set $g(t)=\operatorname{det}\left(\left(f_{1}|\cdots| f_{n}\right)\right)$. Then $g$ is differentiable at $t$ and

$$
g^{\prime}(t)=\sum_{j=1}^{n} \operatorname{det}\left(\left(f_{1}|\cdots| f_{j-1}\left|f_{j}^{\prime}\right| f_{j+1}|\cdots| f_{n}\right)\right)
$$

Proof.

$$
\begin{aligned}
g(t+h)-g(t)= & \operatorname{det}\left(\left(f_{1}(t+h)\left|f_{2}(t+h)\right| \cdots \mid f_{n}(t+h)\right)\right)-\operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t)|\cdots| f_{n}(t)\right) \\
= & \operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t+h)|\cdots| f_{n}(t+h)\right)-\operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t)\left|f_{2}(t+h)\right| \cdots \mid f_{n}(t+h)\right) \\
& +\operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t)\left|f_{2}(t+h)\right| \cdots \mid f_{n}(t+h)\right)-\operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t)\left|f_{2}(t)\right| f_{3}(t+h)|\cdots| f_{n}(t+h)\right) \\
& +\operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t)\left|f_{2}(t)\right| f_{3}(t+h)|\cdots| f_{n}(t+h)\right)-\ldots \\
= & \operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t+h)-f_{1}(t)\left|f_{2}(t+h)\right| \ldots f_{n}(t+h)\right) \\
& +\operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t)\left|f_{2}(t+h)-f_{2}(t)\right| f_{3}(t+h)|\cdots| f_{n}(t+h)+\ldots\right. \\
= & \sum_{j=1}^{n} \operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t)|\cdots| f_{j-1}(t)\left|f_{j}(t+h)-f_{j}(t)\right| f_{j+1}(t+h)|\cdots| f_{n}(t+h)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lim _{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{g(t+h)-g(t)}{h} & =\lim _{h \rightarrow 0} \sum_{j=1}^{n} \operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t)|\cdots| f_{j-1}(t)\left|f_{j}(t+h)-f_{j}(t)\right| f_{j+1}(t+h)|\cdots| f_{n}(t+h)\right) \\
& =\sum_{j=1}^{n} \operatorname{det}\left(f_{1}(t)|\cdots| f_{j-1}(t)\left|f_{j}^{\prime}(t)\right| f_{j+1}(t) \mid \ldots f_{n}(t)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

since det is continuous in its entries.Theorem 61

Proof of Theorem 56.
Notation 62. For $J \subseteq\{1, \ldots, n\}$, we set $A_{J}=A\left(J^{c}, J^{c}\right)$.
Well,

$$
\begin{aligned}
(-1)^{n} S_{n}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) & =a_{0} \\
& =p_{A}(0) \\
& =\operatorname{det}(-A) \\
& =\operatorname{det}((-I) A) \\
& =\operatorname{det}(-I) \operatorname{det}(A) \\
& =(-1)^{n} \operatorname{det}(A)
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
S_{n}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)=\lambda_{1} \ldots \lambda_{n}=a_{0}=\operatorname{det}(A)=E_{n}(A)
$$

And we have the case $k=n$.
Also

$$
\begin{aligned}
(01)^{n-1} S_{n-1}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) & =a_{1} \\
& =p_{A}^{\prime}(0) \\
& =\left.\operatorname{det}(t I-A)^{\prime}\right|_{t=0}
\end{aligned}
$$

But

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{det}(t I-A)^{\prime} & =\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & -a_{12} & -a_{13} & \ldots \\
0 & t-a_{22} & -a_{23} & \ldots \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ldots \\
0 & -a_{n 2} & -a_{n 3} & \ldots
\end{array}\right)+\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
-a_{11} & 0 & -a_{13} & \ldots \\
t-a_{21} & 1 & -a_{23} & \ldots \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ldots \\
-a_{n 1} & 0 & -a_{n 3} & \ldots
\end{array}\right)+\ldots \\
& =\operatorname{det}\left(t I_{n-1}-A_{\{1\}}\right)+\operatorname{det}\left(t I_{n-1}-A_{\{2\}}\right) \ldots
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(t I_{n}-A\right)^{\prime}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \operatorname{det}\left(t I_{n-1}-A_{\{i\}}\right.
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
(-1)^{n-1} S_{n-1}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) & =p_{A}^{\prime}(0) \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{n} \operatorname{det}\left(-A_{\{i\}}\right) \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{n}(-1)^{n-1} \operatorname{det}\left(A_{\{i\}}\right) \\
& =(-1)^{n-1} E_{n-1}(A)
\end{aligned}
$$

So $S_{n-1}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)=E_{n-1}(A)$. And we have the case $k=n-1$.

But now

$$
p_{A}^{\prime \prime}(0)=2 a_{2}=2(-1)^{n-1} S_{n-2}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)
$$

and

$$
p_{A}^{\prime \prime}(t)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \operatorname{det}\left(t I_{n-1}-A_{\{i\}}\right)^{\prime}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j \neq i} \operatorname{det}\left(t I_{n-2}-A_{\{i, j\}}\right)
$$

So

$$
p_{A}^{\prime \prime}(0)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j \neq i} \operatorname{det}\left(-A_{\{i, j\}}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j \neq i}(-1)^{n-2} \operatorname{det}\left(A_{\{i, j\}}\right)=(-1)^{n-2} \cdot 2 \cdot E_{n-2}(A)
$$

So $S_{n-2}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)=E_{n-2}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$, and we have the case $k=n-2$.
In the general case, we have $k!a_{k}=p_{A}^{(k)}(0)$. But

$$
p_{A}^{(k)}(t)=(k!) \sum_{|J|=k} \operatorname{det}\left(t I-A_{J}\right)
$$

so

$$
p_{A}^{(k)}(0)=(k!) E_{n-k}(A)(-1)^{n-k}
$$

Thus $S_{n-k}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)=E_{n-k}(A)$.

### 2.3 Moments and Newton's identities

Definition 63. The $k^{\text {th }}$ moment is given by $\mu_{k}=M_{k}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{k}\right)=\lambda_{1}^{k}+\cdots+\lambda_{n}^{k}$.
Remark 64.

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{1}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) & =\lambda_{1}+\cdots+\lambda_{n} \\
& =M_{1}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) \\
& =\mu_{1} \\
S_{1}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)^{2} & =\left(\lambda_{1}+\cdots+\lambda_{n}\right)^{2} \\
& =\lambda_{1}^{2}+\lambda_{2}^{2}+\cdots+\lambda_{n}^{2}+\sum_{i \neq j} \lambda_{i} \lambda_{j} \\
& =\mu_{2}+2 S_{2}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right) \\
\Longrightarrow \mu_{2} & =S_{1}^{2}-2 S_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 65 (Newton's identities). Suppose $p(t)=t^{n}+a_{n-1} t^{n-1}+\cdots+a_{1} t+a_{0}$. (Note that $a_{k}=$ $(-1)^{n-k} S_{n-k}$.) Then

$$
k a_{n-k}+\mu_{1} a_{n-k+1}+\cdots+\mu_{k} a_{n}=0
$$

for all $k \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$.
Solving these can get $\mu$ in terms of $S$ and vice versa.

### 2.4 Right multiplication

Suppose $A \in M_{m, n}$. We typically regard $\mathbb{F}^{k} \cong M_{k, 1}$. Then

$$
L_{A}: \mathbb{F}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{m}
$$

is given by $L_{A} x=A x$. If we instead regard $\mathbb{F}^{k} \cong M_{1, k}$, then for $y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)$, we have

$$
y A \in M_{1, n} \cong \mathbb{F}^{n}
$$

So $R_{A}: \mathbb{F}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{n}$. Thus $A \in M_{n}$ induces two linear maps

$$
L_{A}, R_{A}: \mathbb{F}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{n}
$$

Question 66. What is the deal with $\sigma$, eigenvalues, etc.?
Well, observe $(y A)^{t}=A^{t} y^{t}$. Thus $R_{A} \cong L_{A^{t}}$.
Theorem 67. For $A \in M_{n}$. Then

1. $p_{A}(t)=p_{A^{t}}(t)$.
2. $\sigma(A)=\sigma\left(A^{t}\right)$.
3. For $\lambda \in \sigma(A)=\sigma\left(A^{t}\right)$, the algebraic multiplicities coincide.
4. For $\lambda \in \sigma(A)=\sigma\left(A^{t}\right)$, the geometric multiplicities coincide.

Proof.

1. $p_{A^{t}}(t)=\operatorname{det}\left(t I-A^{t}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left((t I-A)^{t}\right)=\operatorname{det}(t I-A)=p_{A}(t)$.
2. $\sigma(A)=\left\{x \in \mathbb{F}: p_{A}(x)=0\right\}=\left\{x \in \mathbb{F} ; p_{A^{t}}(x)=0\right\}=\sigma\left(A^{t}\right)$.
3. Follows as algebraic multiplicity is the number of times $t-\lambda$ appears as a factor of $p_{A}(t)=p_{A^{t}}(t)$.
4. The geometric multiplicity of $\lambda$ in $A$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{N}(\lambda I-A)) & =n-\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{R}(\lambda I-A)) \\
& =n-\operatorname{rank}_{c}(\lambda I-A) \\
& =n-\operatorname{rank}_{r}\left(\lambda I-A^{t}\right) \\
& =n-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{R}\left(\lambda I-A^{t}\right)\right) \\
& =\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{N}\left(\lambda I-A^{t}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

which is just the geometric multiplicity of $\lambda$ in $A^{t}$.Theorem 67

### 2.5 Similarity

Let $L: V \rightarrow V$ be linear with $\operatorname{dim}(V)=n$. Let $\mathcal{B}=\left\{v_{1}, \ldots v_{n}\right\}$ be a basis for $V$. Recall

$$
L\left(v_{j}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} b_{i, j} v_{i}
$$

where $B=\left(b_{i, j}\right) \in M_{n}$ is the matrix for $L$ with respect to $\mathcal{B}$, denoted $B=\operatorname{mat}_{\mathcal{B}}(L)$. Define $S: \mathbb{F}^{n} \rightarrow V$ be given by $S e_{j}=v_{j}$. Then the following diagram commutes:


For $A=\left(a_{i j}\right) \in M_{n}$, a new basis $\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$, we have

where $S e_{j}=v_{j}$; we set $\operatorname{mat}_{\mathcal{B}}\left(L_{A}\right)=L_{B}$; then $L_{A}=S L_{B} S^{-1}$. i.e.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A=S^{-1} B S \\
& B=S A S^{-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

$$
\operatorname{mat}_{\mathcal{B}}\left(L_{A}\right)=S A S^{-1}
$$

where $S=\left[v_{1}|\cdots| v_{n}\right]$.

Definition 68. Suppose $A, B \in M_{n}$. We say $B$ is similar to $A$ if there is $S \in M_{n}^{-1}$ such that $B=S A S^{-1}$. We then write $B \sim A$.

## Remark 69.

1. $A=I^{-1} A I$. So $A \sim A$.
2. If $B \sim A$, say $B=S A S^{-1}$, then $A=\left(S^{-1}\right)^{-1} B\left(S^{-1}\right)$, so $A \sim B$.
3. If $C \sim B$ and $B \sim A$, then $C=R B R^{-1}, B=S A S^{-1}$, then $C=(S R)^{-1} A(S R)$.

So $\sim$ is an equivalence relation.
Proposition 70. Suppose $B \sim A$. Then

1. $p_{A}(t)=p_{B}(t)$.
2. $\sigma(A)=\sigma(B)$.
3. The geometric and algebraic multiplicities of $\lambda \in \sigma(A)=\sigma(B)$ coincide.
4. $E_{k}(A)=E_{k}(B)$ for $1 \leq k \leq n$.

Proof.

1. $p_{B}(t)=\operatorname{det}(t I-B)=\operatorname{det}\left(S(t I-A) S^{-1}\right)=\operatorname{det}(S) \operatorname{det}\left(S^{-1}\right) \operatorname{det}(t I-A)=p_{A}(t)$.
2. $\sigma(A)$ is the roots of $p_{A}(t)=p_{B}(t)$, and is thus the roots of $p_{B}(t)$.
3. The algebriac multiplicities are clear, as they have the same characteristic polynomial. For the geometric multiplicity, note that

$$
\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{N}(\lambda I-A))=\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{N}\left(S(\lambda I-A) S^{-1}\right)\right)
$$

4. Because $E_{k}(A)$ is determined by the $k^{\text {th }}$ coefficient of $p_{A}(t)=p_{B}(t)$.

Proposition 70
Example 71. $A, B \in M_{7}$ are given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A=\left(\begin{array}{lllllll}
0 & 1 & & & & & \\
0 & 0 & & & & & \\
& & 0 & 1 & & & \\
& & 0 & 0 & & & \\
& & & & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
& & & & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
& & & & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right) \\
& B=\left(\begin{array}{lllllll}
0 & & & & & & \\
& 0 & 1 & 0 & & & \\
& 0 & 0 & 1 & & & \\
& 0 & 0 & 0 & & & \\
& & & & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
& & & & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
& & & & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Then $A$ and $B$ are not similar but $p_{A}(t)=p_{B}(t)=t^{7}, \sigma(A)=\sigma(B)=\{0\}$, the algebraic multiplicities of 0 are both 7 , and the geometric multiplicities of 0 are both 3 .

Definition 72. $D=\left(d_{i j}\right) \in M_{n}$ is diagonal if $d_{i j}=0$ for all $i \neq j$. We write $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(d_{11}, \ldots, d_{n n}\right)$. We say $A \in M_{n}$ is diagonalizable if there is diagonal $D$ and $S \in M_{n}^{-1}$ such that $D=S A S^{-1}$.

Proposition 73. $A \in M_{n}$ is diagonalizable if and only if there is a basis for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$ of eigenvectors of $A$.

Proof.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Suppose $D=S A S^{-1}$, where $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$. Then $A S^{-1}=S^{-1} D$. Hence $A S^{-1} e_{j}=$ $S^{-1} D e_{j}=\lambda_{j} S^{-1} e_{j}$, and $\left\{S^{-1} e_{1}, \ldots, S^{-1} e_{n}\right\}$ is a basis for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$ of eigenvectors of $A$.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ Suppose $\mathcal{B}=\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ is a basis with $A v_{j}=\lambda_{j} v_{j}$. Then $R=\left[v_{1}|\cdots| v_{n}\right]$ is invertible, and $A R e_{j}=A v_{j}=\lambda_{j} v_{j}=\lambda_{j} v_{j}=\lambda_{j} R e_{j}=R D e_{j}$. So, if $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$, then $R^{-1} A R=D$.Proposition 73
Lemma 74. Suppose $A \in M_{n}, B \in M_{m}$. Let

$$
C=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & 0 \\
0 & B
\end{array}\right) \in M_{n+m}
$$

Then $C$ is diagonalizable if and only if $A$ and $B$ are.
Proof.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ Let $D_{1}=S A S^{-1}, D_{2}=R B R^{-1}$. Then

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
S & 0 \\
0 & R
\end{array}\right)
$$

diagonalizes $C$.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Suppose

$$
S^{-1} C S=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
D_{1} & 0 \\
0 & D_{2}
\end{array}\right)
$$

where

$$
S=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
S_{11} & S_{12} \\
S_{21} & S_{22}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then

$$
C S e_{j}=S\left(\begin{array}{cc}
D_{1} & 0 \\
0 & D_{2}
\end{array}\right) e_{j}=S \lambda_{j} e_{j}=\lambda_{j} S e_{j}
$$

where

$$
S e_{j}=\binom{x_{j}}{y_{j}} \in \mathbb{F}^{n+m}
$$

Then

$$
\binom{A x_{j}}{B y_{j}}=C\binom{x_{j}}{y_{j}}=\binom{\lambda x_{j}}{\lambda y_{j}}
$$

So the $x_{i} \in \mathbb{F}^{n}$ are all eigenvectors of $A$, and the $y_{i} \in \mathbb{F}^{m}$ are all eigenvectors of $B$.
Notice, though, that

$$
S=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
x_{1} & \ldots & x_{n+m} \\
y_{1} & \ldots & y_{n+m}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and $S$ is invertible; so $\operatorname{rank}(S)=n+m$. Thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{rank}_{r}\left[x_{1}|\cdots| x_{n+m}\right] & =n \\
\operatorname{rank}_{r}\left[y_{1}|\cdots| y_{n+m}\right] & =m
\end{aligned}
$$

and in particular

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{rank}_{c}\left[x_{1}|\cdots| x_{n+m}\right] & =n \\
\operatorname{rank}_{c}\left[y_{1}|\cdots| y_{n+m}\right] & =m
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus some subset of $n$ of the vectors $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+m}\right\}$ are linearly independent. This set of $n$ is a basis for $\mathbb{F}^{n}$; thus $A$ has a basis of eigenvectors, and $A$ is diagonalizable. Proof that $R$ is diagonalizable is mutatis mutandis.

Proposition 75. Suppose

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
B_{1} & \ldots & 0 \\
\vdots & \ldots & \vdots \\
0 & \ldots & B_{k}
\end{array}\right)
$$

with each $B_{j} \in M_{n_{j}}$. Then $B$ is diagonalizable if and only if each $B_{j}$ is diagonalizable.
Proof. $b=2$ was done above. Assume the result holds for $k \in \mathbb{N}$; we show the result for $k+1$. Assume

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
B_{1} & \cdots & 0 \\
\vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\
0 & \cdots & B_{k+1}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
C & 0 \\
0 & B_{k+1}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $B$ is diagonalizable if and only if $C$ and $B_{k+1}$ are, which holds if and only if $B_{1}, \ldots, B_{k}$ and $B_{k+1}$ are by induction.Proposition 75

Definition 76. A set $\mathcal{F} \subseteq M_{n}$ is called simultaneously diagonalizable if there is $S \in M_{n}^{-1}$ such that $S A S^{-1}$ is diagonal for all $A \in \mathcal{F}$. We say $\mathcal{F}$ is commuting if for all $A, B \in \mathcal{F}$, we have $A B=B A$.

Theorem 77. Let $\mathcal{F} \subseteq M_{n}$. Then $\mathcal{F}$ is simultaneously diagonalizable if and only if

1. Each $A \in \mathcal{F}$ is diagonalizable.
2. $\mathcal{F}$ is commuting.

Proof. We do the case $\mathcal{F}=\{A, B\}$.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Suppose there is $S \in M_{n}^{-1}$ such that $S^{-1} A S$ and $S^{-1} B S$ are both diagonal. Then

1. $A$ and $B$ were both diagonalizable.
2. Since diagonal matrices commute, we have

$$
S^{-1} A B S=S^{-1} A S S^{-1} B S=S^{-1} B S S^{-1} A S=S^{-1} B A S
$$

and thus

$$
A B=B A
$$

$(\Longleftarrow)$ Pick $S$ such that $S^{-1} A S$ is diagonal. Write

$$
S^{-1} A S=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\lambda_{1} I_{n_{1}} & & & 0 \\
& \lambda_{2} I_{n_{2}} & & \\
& & \ddots & \\
0 & & & \lambda_{k} I_{n_{k}}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $A B=B A$ implies $\left(S^{-1} A S\right)\left(S^{-1} B S\right)=\left(S^{-1} B S\right)\left(S^{-1} A S\right)$. Thus, blocking $S^{-1} B S \in M_{n_{1}+\cdots+n_{k}}$ with $R_{i j} \in M_{n_{i}, n_{j}}$, we have

$$
\left(\lambda_{i} R_{i j}\right)=\left(R_{i j} \lambda_{j}\right)
$$

So $R_{i j}=0$ for $i \neq j$. So

$$
S^{-1} B S=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
R_{11} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & R_{k k}
\end{array}\right)
$$

But $B$ is diagonalizable. So $S^{-1} B S$ is diagonalizable. So $R_{i i}$ is diagonalizable for each $1 \leq i \leq k$. Pick $T_{i} \in M_{n_{i}}^{-1}$ such that $T^{-1} R_{i i} T_{i}$ is diagonal. Let

$$
T=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
T_{1} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & T_{k}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $T\left(S^{-1} B S\right) T$ is diagonal, and

$$
T^{-1}\left(S^{-1} A S\right) T=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
T_{1}^{-1} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & T_{k}^{-1}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\lambda_{1} I_{n_{1}} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & \lambda_{k} I_{n_{k}}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
T_{1}^{-1} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & T_{k}^{-1}
\end{array}\right)=S^{-1} A S
$$

is diagonal. So $(S T)^{-1} A(S T)$ and $(S T)^{-1} B(S T)$ are both diagonal.
General case was mumbled about.

How does $A B$ compare to $B A$ ?
Well, if $A$ is invertible, then $A^{-1}(A B) A=B A$, so $A B \sim B A$. So $p_{A B}(t)=p_{B A(t)}$ and $\sigma(A B)=\sigma(B A)$. Example 78.

$$
\begin{aligned}
A & =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
1 & 1 \\
0 & 0
\end{array}\right) \\
B & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
-1 & 0
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
A B & =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 0 \\
0 & 0
\end{array}\right) \\
B A & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 1 \\
-1 & -1
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Then $A B \nsim B A$. Also $p_{A B}(t)=t^{2}=p_{B A}(t)$. So $\sigma(A B)=\sigma(B A)$.
Theorem 79. For $A \in M_{m, n}, B \in M_{n, m}$, we have $t^{n} p_{A B}(t)=t^{m} p_{B A}(t)$.
Corollary 80. If $A \in M_{m, n}, B \in M_{n, m}$. Then $\sigma(A B) \cup\{0\}=\{0\} \cup \sigma(B A)$.
Proof of Theorem 79. Observe

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I_{m} & A \\
0 & I_{n}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I_{m} & -A \\
0 & I_{n}
\end{array}\right)=I_{m+n}
$$

Now

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I_{m} & -A \\
0 & I_{n}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A B & 0 \\
B & 0
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I_{m} & A \\
0 & I_{n}
\end{array}\right) & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A B-A B & 0 \\
B & 0
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I_{m} & A \\
0 & I_{n}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 0 \\
B & B A
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A B & 0 \\
B & 0
\end{array}\right) \sim\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 0 \\
B & B A
\end{array}\right)
$$

So

$$
t^{n} p_{A B}(t)=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
t I_{m}-A B & 0 \\
-B & t I_{n}
\end{array}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
t I_{m} & 0 \\
-B & t I_{n}-B A
\end{array}\right)=t^{m} p_{B A}(t)
$$

### 2.6 Persistence of eigenvalues

Theorem 81. Suppose $A \in M_{n} \lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, and $1 \leq k \leq n$. Consider the statements
(a) $\lambda$ is an eigenvalue of $A$ of geometric multiplicity $\geq k$.
(b) For all $m>n-k$ and for all $S \subseteq\{1, \ldots, n\}$ with $|S|=m$, we have that $\lambda$ is an eigenvalue of $\widehat{A}=A[S, S]$.
(c) $\lambda$ is $n$ eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity $\geq k$.

Then $(a) \Longrightarrow(b) \Longrightarrow$ (c).
Proof.
$\mathbf{( a )} \Longrightarrow(b)$ Suffices to do the case $S=\{1, \ldots, m\}$. Write

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\widehat{A} & B \\
C & D
\end{array}\right)
$$

Pick $v_{1}, \ldots, v_{k}$ linearly independent eigenvectors with $A v_{i}=\lambda v_{i}$. Say

$$
v_{i}=\binom{u_{i}}{w_{i}}
$$

where $u_{i} \in \mathbb{C}^{m}$ and $w_{i} \in \mathbb{C}^{n-m}$. Since $k>n-m$, we have $\left\{w_{1}, \ldots, w_{k}\right\}$ is linearly dependent. So there are $\alpha_{i}$ not all 0 such that

$$
\alpha_{1} w_{1}+\cdots+\alpha_{k} w_{k}=0
$$

Thus

$$
\alpha_{1} v_{1}+\cdots+\alpha_{k} v_{k}=\binom{u}{0}
$$

and $u \neq 0$ since $\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{k}\right\}$ is linearly independent. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
A v & =\sum_{i} A\left(\alpha_{i} v_{i}\right) \\
& =\sum_{i} \alpha_{i} A v_{i} \\
& =\sum_{i} \alpha_{i} \lambda v_{i} \\
& =\lambda v
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\widehat{A} & B \\
C & D
\end{array}\right)\binom{u}{0}=\binom{\widehat{A} u}{C u}=\lambda\binom{u}{0}
$$

and $\widehat{A} u=\lambda u$.
$(\mathrm{b}) \Longrightarrow$ (c)
Lemma 82. Given $\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{n}$ such that $S_{m}\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{n}\right)=0$ for all $m>n-k$, then at least $k$ of the $\mu_{i}$ are 0 .

## Proof. Well

$$
\mu_{1} \ldots \mu_{n}=S_{n}\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{n}\right)=0
$$

So some $\mu_{i}=0$; say $\mu_{1}=0$. Also

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & =S_{n-1}\left(\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{n}\right) \\
& =\mu_{2} \ldots \mu_{n}+\mu_{1}\left(\mu_{3} \ldots \mu_{n}+\mu_{2} \mu_{4} \ldots \mu_{n}+\cdots+\mu_{2} \ldots \mu_{n-1}\right) \\
& =\mu_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

So there is $2 \leq i \leq n$ such that $\mu_{i}=0$; say $\mu_{2}=0$. Continuing as above, we find $k$ distinct $i$ such that $\mu_{i}=0$.
$\square$ Lemma 82

Suppose $\lambda$ is an eigenvalue of $A[S, S]$ for all $|S|=m$, all $m>n-k$. Then $\operatorname{det}(\lambda I-A[S, S])=0$ for all such $S, m$. Look at $\lambda I-A$. We then have

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{m}(\lambda I-A) & =\sum_{|S|=m} \operatorname{det}(\lambda I-A[S, S]) \\
& =0
\end{aligned}
$$

So $S_{m}\left(\lambda-\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda-\lambda_{n}\right)=0$ for all $m>n-k$. So there is $k$ distinct $i$ such that $\lambda=\lambda_{i}$. So $(t-\lambda)^{k}$ is a factor of

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{n}\left(t-\lambda_{i}\right)=p_{A}(t)
$$

Corollary 83. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ has $\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{N}(A))=k$. Then for all $m>n-k$ and all $|S|=m$, we have that $A[S, S]$ is not invertible.

Proof. Since $\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{N}(A))=k$, we have that 0 has geometric multiplicity $k$; then apply (b).

## 3 Unitaries and isometries

Definition 84. A map $L: \mathbb{F}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{m}$ is called a isometry if for all $x \in \mathbb{F}^{n}$, we have

$$
\|x\|_{2}=\|L x\|_{2}
$$

Remark 85. Suppose $L: \mathbb{F}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{m}$ is an isometry. Then $\operatorname{dist}(x, y)=\|x-y\|_{2}=\|L x-L y\|_{2}=\operatorname{dist}(L x, L y)$. We also have $\mathcal{N}(L)=\{0\}$, so $L$ is injective, and $m \geq n$.

Theorem 86. Suppose $V \in M_{m, n}$ with $m \geq n$. Then the following are equivalent:

1. $L_{V}$ is an isometry.
2. The columns of $V$ are orthonormal.
3. $V^{*} V=I_{n}$.

Proof.
$\mathbf{( 1 )} \Longrightarrow \mathbf{( 2 )}$ Let $V=\left[v_{1}|\cdots| v_{n}\right]$. Then

$$
\left\|v_{j}\right\|_{2}=\left\|L_{v} e_{j}\right\|_{2}=\left\|e_{j}\right\|_{2}=1
$$

Take any $i \neq j$, and $|\alpha|=1$. Then

$$
\left\|v_{i}+\alpha v_{j}\right\|_{2}=\left\|L_{V}\left(e_{i}+\alpha e_{j}\right)\right\|_{2}=\left\|e_{i}+\alpha e_{j}\right\|_{2}=\sqrt{1+|\alpha|^{2}}=\sqrt{2}
$$

So

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle v_{i}+\alpha v_{j}, v_{i}+\alpha v_{j}\right\rangle & =2 \\
\Longrightarrow\left\langle v_{i}, v_{i}\right\rangle+\bar{\alpha}\left\langle v_{i}, v_{j}\right\rangle+\alpha\left\langle v_{j}, v_{i}\right\rangle+\left\langle v_{j}, v_{j}\right\rangle & =2 \\
\Longrightarrow \bar{\alpha}\left\langle v_{i}, v_{j}\right\rangle+\bar{\alpha}\left\langle v_{i}, v_{j}\right\rangle & =0
\end{aligned}
$$

Pick $|\alpha|=1$ so that $\bar{\alpha}\left\langle v_{i}, v_{j}\right\rangle=\left|\left\langle v_{i}, v_{j}\right\rangle\right|$. Then $2\left|\left\langle v_{i}, v_{j}\right\rangle\right|=0$, and $v_{i} \perp v_{j}$.
$\mathbf{( 2 )} \Longrightarrow \mathbf{( 3 )}$ Write $V=\left[v_{1}|\cdots| v_{n}\right]$. Then

$$
V^{*}=\left(\begin{array}{c}
v_{1}^{*} \\
\vdots \\
v_{n}^{*}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $V^{*} V=\left(v_{i}^{*} v_{j}\right)=\left(\left\langle v_{j}, v_{i}\right\rangle\right)=I_{n}$.
$\mathbf{( 3 )} \Longrightarrow(1)$ Note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|L_{V}(x)\right\|_{2}^{2} & =\|V x\|_{2}^{2} \\
& =\langle V x, V x\rangle \\
& =(V x)^{*}(V x) \\
& =x^{2} V^{*} V x \\
& =x^{*} I x \\
& =x^{*} x \\
& =\|x\|_{2}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

What can be said about the rows of an isometry?
Well, write $V^{*}=\left[r_{1} \mid \ldots r_{n}\right]$. Then

$$
V=\left(\begin{array}{c}
r_{1}^{*} \\
\vdots \\
r_{n}^{*}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and

$$
V x=\left(\begin{array}{c}
r_{1}^{*} x \\
\vdots \\
r_{n}^{*} x
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\left\langle x, r_{1}\right\rangle \\
\vdots \\
\left\langle x, r_{m}\right\rangle
\end{array}\right)
$$

Definition 87. A set of vectors $\left\{r_{1}, \ldots, r_{m}\right\} \subseteq \mathbb{F}^{n}$ is called a Parseval frame for $\mathbb{F}^{n}$ if

$$
\|x\|_{2}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{m}\left|\left\langle x, r_{i}\right\rangle\right|^{2}
$$

for all $x \in \mathbb{F}^{n}$.
Proposition 88. Suppose $\left\{r_{1}, \ldots, r_{m}\right\} \subseteq \mathbb{F}^{n}$ is a Parseval frame if and only if

$$
V=\left(\begin{array}{c}
r_{1}^{*} \\
\vdots \\
r_{m}^{*}
\end{array}\right)
$$

is an isometry.
Theorem 89. Let $\left\{r_{1}, \ldots, r_{m}\right\} \subseteq \mathbb{F}^{n}$. Then $\left\{r_{1}, \ldots, r_{m}\right\}$ are a Parseval frame if and only if for all $x \in \mathbb{F}^{n}$, we have that

$$
x=\sum_{i=1}^{m}\left\langle x, r_{i}\right\rangle r_{i}
$$

Proof.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Let

$$
V=\left(\begin{array}{c}
r_{1}^{*} \\
\vdots \\
r_{m}^{*}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $V: \mathbb{F}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{m}$ is an isometry. Then

$$
V^{*}=\left[r_{1}|\cdots| r_{n}\right]: \mathbb{F}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^{n}
$$

and $V^{*} e_{j}=r_{j}$. Since $V$ is an isometry, we have that

$$
\begin{aligned}
x & =I_{n} x \\
& =V^{*} V(x) \\
& =V^{*}\left(\begin{array}{c}
\left\langle x, r_{1}\right\rangle \\
\vdots \\
\left\langle x, r_{m}\right\rangle
\end{array}\right) \\
& =V^{*}\left(\sum_{j=1}^{m}\left\langle x, r_{j}\right\rangle e_{j}\right) \\
& =\sum_{j=1}^{m}\left\langle x, r_{j}\right\rangle r_{j}
\end{aligned}
$$

$(\Longleftarrow)$ Let

$$
V=\left(\begin{array}{c}
r_{1}^{*} \\
\vdots \\
r_{m}^{*}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
V^{*} V x & =V^{*}\left(\begin{array}{c}
\left\langle x, r_{1}\right\rangle \\
\vdots \\
\left\langle x, r_{m}\right\rangle
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\sum_{j=1}^{m}\left\langle x, r_{j}\right\rangle r_{j} \\
& =x
\end{aligned}
$$

So $V^{*} V x=x$ for all $x$. So $V^{*} V=I_{n}$ and $V$ is an isometry. So $\left\{r_{1}, \ldots, r_{m}\right\}$ is a Parseval frame.
$\square$ Theorem 89
Definition 90. A Parseval frame $\left\{r_{1}, \ldots, r_{m}\right\} \subseteq \mathbb{F}^{n}$ is called uniform if $\left\|r_{i}\right\|=\left\|r_{j}\right\|$ for all $i, j \in\{1, \ldots, m\}$. It is called equiangular if it is uniform and $\left|\left\langle r_{i}, r_{j}\right\rangle\right|$ is constant for all $i \neq j$.

## Fact 91.

1. For all $m \geq n$ there exist uniform Parseval frames of size $m$.
2. Finding the pairs $(m, n)$ such that there is exist equiangular Parseval frames is an area of current research.
Fact 92 (The case of $\mathbb{R}$ ).
3. If there is an equiangular Parseval frame then $m \leq \frac{n(n+1}{2}$.
4. There are many $n$ for which there does not exist an $\left(\frac{n(n+1)}{2}, n\right)$ equiangular Parseval frame. (i.e. ambient dimension is $n$, frame size $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$.)
5. $(m, n)$ equiangular Parseval frames exist if and only if there is a completely regular graph on $m$ vertices with certin parameters that tell the value of $n$. (I believe Wikipedia knows these as "strongly regular graphs".)

Fact 93 (The case of $\mathbb{C}$ ).

1. If there is an equiangular Parseval frame, then $m \leq n^{2}$.
2. Zauner's conjecture: for all $n$ there is $\left\{r_{1}, \ldots, r_{n^{2}}\right\}$ an equiangular Parseval frame for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$.
3. What pairs $(m, n)$ have equiangular Parseval frames? Very little is known.

A closely related problem:
Example 94. If $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ and $\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ are both orthonormal bases for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$, then

$$
\left\{\frac{u_{1}}{\sqrt{2}}, \ldots, \frac{u_{n}}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{v_{1}}{\sqrt{2}}, \ldots, \frac{v_{n}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\}
$$

is a uniform Parseval frame, since

So

$$
\|x\|^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|\left\langle x, u_{i}\right\rangle\right|^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|\left\langle x, v_{i}\right\rangle\right|^{2}
$$

$$
\|x\|^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|\left\langle x, \frac{u_{i}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\rangle\right|^{2}+\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|\left\langle x, \frac{v_{i}}{\sqrt{2}}\right\rangle\right|^{2}
$$

Definition 95. Two orthonormal bases $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ and $\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ are called mutually unbiased if $\left|\left\langle u_{i}, v_{j}\right\rangle\right|$ is constant for $i, j \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. It's not hard to see that the constant is $\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}$.

Question 96. How many orthonormal bases can there be such that each pair of bases is mutually unbiased?
It is conjectured that the answer is $n+1$; this is known when $n=p^{k}$ for $p$ prime. The question is still open for $n=6$.

Definition 97. A matrix $U \in M_{n}$ is unitary if $U^{*} U=I_{n}$.
Theorem 98. Suppose $U \in M_{n}$. Then the following are equivalent:
(a) $U$ is unitary.
(b) $U$ is invertible and $U^{-1}=U^{*}$.
(c) $U U^{*}=I_{n}$.
(d) $U^{*}$ is unitary.
(e) The columns of $U$ are orthonormal.
(f) The rows of $U$ are orthonormal.
(g) $U$ is an isometry.

Proof.
(a) $\Longleftrightarrow(\mathrm{g}) \Longleftrightarrow$ (e) By isometry theorem.
(a) $\Longrightarrow$ (b) $U^{*}$ is a left inverse of $U$ implies that $U^{*}$ is a right inverse of $U$.
(b) $\Longrightarrow$ (c) If $U^{*}=U^{-1}$ then $I=U U^{-1}=U U^{*}$.
(c) $\Longrightarrow$ (d) $I=U U^{*}=\left(U^{*}\right)^{*} U^{*}$, so $U^{*}$ is unitary.
$(\mathbf{d}) \Longrightarrow(\mathbf{f})$ Since $U^{*}$ is unitary, we have that $U^{*}$ is an isometry. So the columns of $U^{*}$ are orthonormal. So the rows of $U$ are orthonormal.
$(\mathbf{f}) \Longrightarrow(\mathbf{d})$ If the rows of $U$ are orthonormal, then $U U^{*}=I$, and $U^{*}$ is unitary.

Proposition 99. If $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ is an orthonormal set of vectors, then they are linearly independent.

Proof. Suppose

$$
\alpha_{1} u_{1}+\cdots+\alpha_{n} u_{n}=0
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & =\left\langle\alpha_{1} u_{1}+\cdots+\alpha_{n} u_{n}, \alpha_{1} u_{1}+\cdots+\alpha_{n} u_{n}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{i, j=1}^{n} \alpha_{i} \overline{\alpha_{j}}\left\langle u_{i}, u_{j}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

so $\alpha_{i}=0$ for all $i \in\{1, \ldots, n\}$. So $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ is linearly independent.Proposition 99

Hence an orthonormal set of $n$ vectors in $\mathbb{C}^{n}$ is a basis for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$.
Remark 100.

1. The set of $n \times n$ invertible matrices $M_{n}^{-1}$ is a grape, usually denoted $\mathrm{GL}(n ; \mathbb{F})$.
2. The subset $\mathcal{U}(n) \subseteq M_{n}^{-1}$ of unitary matrices is a subgrape, since if $U, V \in \mathcal{U}(n)$, then

$$
(U V)^{*}(U V)=V^{*} U^{*} U V=V^{*} V=I_{n}
$$

and if $U \in \mathcal{U}(n)$, then $U^{-1}=U^{*} \in \mathcal{U}(n)$.
When $\mathbb{F}=\mathbb{R}$, the unitaries are often called the orthogonal matrices and denoted $\mathcal{O}(n)$.
Definition 101. Given matrices $A=\left(a_{i, j}\right)$ and $B=\left(b_{i, j}\right)$ in $M_{m, n} \cong \mathbb{C}^{m n}$, we can think of

$$
\operatorname{dist}(A, B)=\left(\sum_{i=1}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{n}\left|a_{i, j}-b_{i, j}\right|^{2}\right)
$$

In this metric, given a sequence of matrices $A_{k}=\left(a_{i, j}(k)\right) \rightarrow A=\left(a_{i, j}\right)$ as $k \rightarrow \infty$ if and only if each $a_{i, j}(k) \rightarrow a_{i, j}$ as $k \rightarrow \infty$.

Remark 102. $\frac{1}{k} I_{n} \in \mathrm{GL}(n, \mathbb{F})=M_{n}^{-1}$ but $\frac{1}{k} I_{n} \rightarrow 0 \notin M_{n}^{-1}$. So GL $(n, \mathbb{F})$ is not closed.

## Lemma 103.

1. Suppose $U_{k} \in M_{n}$ are unitary an $\left(U_{k}: k \in \mathbb{N}\right) \rightarrow U$. Then $U$ is unitary. i.e. $\mathcal{U}(n)$ is a closed subset of $M_{n}$.
2. $\mathcal{U}(n) \subseteq M_{n}$ is compact.
3. Suppose $U_{k} \in M_{n}$ are unitary. Then there is a subsequence $\left(U_{k_{j}}: j \in \mathbb{N}\right.$ ) that converges to some $U \in M_{n}$ (which must then be unitary by part (1)).
Proof.
4. Let $U_{k}=\left(u_{i j}(k)\right) ;$ let $U=\left(u_{i j}\right)$. We then have that

$$
\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} u_{i j}(k)=u_{i j}
$$

for all $i, j$. Note also that $U^{*}=\left(\overline{u_{j i}}\right)$, and that

$$
U^{*} U=\left(\sum_{\ell=1}^{n} \overline{u_{\ell, i}} u_{\ell, j}\right)=\left(\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{\ell=1}^{n} \overline{u_{\ell, i}(k)} u_{\ell, j}(k)\right)=I_{n}
$$

So $U \in \mathcal{U}(n)$.
2. We just showed that $\mathcal{U}(n)$ is closed. Also $U \in \mathcal{U}(n)$ means that the columns are orthonormal. So

$$
\|U\|_{2}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|u_{i j}\right|^{2}=n
$$

So $\mathcal{U}(n)$ is closed and bounded. So it is compact.
3. Heine-Borel.Lemma 103
Remark 104.

1. Suppose $U \in \mathcal{U}(n)$. Then $U^{*} U=I$. So

$$
\begin{aligned}
1 & =\operatorname{det}\left(U^{*} U\right) \\
& =\operatorname{det}\left(U^{*}\right) \operatorname{det}(U) \\
& =\overline{\operatorname{det}(U)} \operatorname{det}(U) \\
& =|\operatorname{det}(U)|
\end{aligned}
$$

2. If $U \in \mathcal{O}(n)$ then $\operatorname{det}(U) \in\{ \pm 1\}$.
3. We look at $\mathbb{R}^{2}$. The matrix representing a rotation by $\theta$ is then

$$
R(\theta)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\
\sin \theta & \cos \theta
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $R(\theta)$ is unitary, and $\operatorname{det}(R(\theta))=1$. Also, if we have a unitary $U$ with

$$
U e_{1}=\binom{c}{s}
$$

for some $c, s$, we know that

$$
U e_{2} \perp\binom{c}{s}
$$

and $\left\|U e_{2}\right\|_{2}=1$; so

$$
U e_{2}=\binom{ \pm s}{\mp c}
$$

We then conclude that

$$
\mathcal{O}(2)=\{R(\theta): 0 \leq \theta<2 \pi\} \cup\left\{R(\theta)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & -1
\end{array}\right): 0 \leq \theta<2 \pi\right\}
$$

and further that the former have determinant 1 while the latter have determinant -1 . Finally, note that

$$
R\left(\theta_{1}\right) R\left(\theta_{2}\right)=R\left(\theta_{1}+\theta_{2}\right)=R\left(\theta_{2}\right) R\left(\theta_{1}\right)
$$

### 3.1 Householder transformations

Suppose $w \in \mathbb{C}^{n} \backslash\{0\}$. Define

$$
U_{w} x=x-\frac{2}{\|w\|_{2}^{2}}\left(w w^{*}\right) x
$$

i.e.

$$
U_{w}=I-\frac{2}{\|w\|_{2}^{2}}\left(w w^{*}\right)
$$

to be the Householder transformation of $w$. Note that

$$
U_{w}=I-2\left(\left(\frac{w}{\|w\|}\right)\left(\frac{w}{\|w\|}\right)^{*}\right)
$$

In practice, these are normalized for unit vectors.
Given $v \in \mathbb{C}^{n}$, write $v=v_{1}+v_{2}$ where $v_{1} \perp w$ and $v_{1}=\alpha w$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
U_{w} v & =v-2\left(\frac{w}{\|w\|} \frac{w^{*}}{\|w\|}\right) v \\
& =v-2\left\langle v, \frac{w}{\|w\|} \frac{w}{\|w\|}\right\rangle \\
& =v_{1}+v_{2}-2\left\langle v_{1}, \frac{w}{\|w\|}\right\rangle \frac{w}{\|w\|} \\
& =v_{1}+v_{2}-2 \alpha\left\langle w, \frac{w}{\|w\|}\right\rangle \frac{w}{\|w\|} \\
& =v_{1}+v_{2}-2 \alpha w \\
& =v_{1}+v_{2}-2 v_{1} \\
& =v_{2}-v_{1}
\end{aligned}
$$

Geometrically, this corresponds to negating the $w$ component.
Remark 105. $U_{w}^{*}=U_{w}$; then $U_{w}^{*} U_{w}=U_{w}^{2}=I$. So $U_{w}$ is unitary.

### 3.2 Unitary equivalence

Definition 106. We say $A, B \in M_{n}$ are unitarily equivalent (written $A \sim_{\text {u.e. }} B$ ) if there is $U \in \mathcal{U}(n)$ such that $B=U^{*} A U$.

Remark 107.

1. This is an equivalence relation.
2. Since $U^{*}=U^{-1}$, we have that $A \sim_{\text {u.e. }} B \Longrightarrow A \sim B$.

Proposition 108. Let $A, B \in M_{n}$. If $A \sim_{\text {u.e. }} B$ then

$$
\sum_{i, j=1}^{n}\left|a_{i j}\right|^{2}=\sum_{i, j=1}^{n}\left|b_{i j}\right|^{2}
$$

We prove this using traces.
Proposition 109. Suppose $A \in M_{m, n}$; suppose $B \in M_{n, m}$. Then $\operatorname{tr}(A B)=\operatorname{tr}(B A)$.
Proof. Well,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{tr}(A B) & =\sum_{i=1}^{m} \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{i k} b_{k i} \\
& =\sum_{q=1}^{n} \sum_{\ell=1}^{m} b_{q \ell} q_{\ell q} \\
& =\operatorname{tr}(B A)
\end{aligned}
$$

Proposition 110. Suppose $A \in M_{m, n}$. Then

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left(A^{*} A\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(A A^{*}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{n}\left|a_{i j}\right|^{2}
$$

Proof. Well, $A^{*}=\left(\overline{a_{j, i}}\right)$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{tr}\left(A^{*} A\right) & =\sum_{i} \sum_{k} \overline{a_{k i}} a_{k i} \\
& =\sum\left|a_{i, j}\right|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proposition 110
Proof of Proposition 108. Suppose $B=U^{*} A U$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i, j}\left|b_{i j}\right|^{2} & =\operatorname{tr}\left(B^{*} B\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(\left(U^{*} A^{*} U\right)\left(U^{*} A U\right)\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(U^{*}\left(A^{*} A U\right)\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(\left(A^{*} A U\right) U^{*}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(A^{*} A\right) \\
& =\sum_{i, j}\left|a_{i, j}\right|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Example 111. Let

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 1 & 1 \\
0 & 2 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 3
\end{array}\right) \\
& B=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 2 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 3
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Then $A$ has 3 distinct eigenvalues; so we have a basis of eigenvectors. So $A$ is diagonalizable. So $A \sim B$. But

$$
\sum\left|a_{i, j}\right|^{2}>\sum\left|b_{i, j}\right|^{2}
$$

so $A \not \chi_{\text {u.e. }} B$.
Example 112 (H. Radjavi). Suppose

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\lambda_{1} & p_{1} & & & \\
& \lambda_{2} & p_{2} & & \\
& & \ddots & \ddots & \\
& & & \lambda_{n-1} & p_{n-1} \\
& & & & \lambda_{n}
\end{array}\right)
$$

If $\lambda_{i} \neq \lambda_{j}$ for all $i \neq j$ and $p_{i}>0$ for all $i$ and $A^{\prime}$ is another usch matrix with $\lambda_{i}=\lambda_{i}^{\prime}$, then $A \sim_{\text {u.e. }} A^{\prime}$ if and only if $A=A^{\prime}$.

### 3.3 Specht's invariants

Let $s, t$ be free non-commuting variables. Given

$$
w(s, t)=s^{n_{1}} t^{m_{1}} \ldots s^{n_{k}} t_{m_{k}}
$$

where all $m_{i} \geq 0$, all $n_{i} \geq 0$, and given $A, B \in M_{n}$, we can set

$$
w(A, B)=A^{n_{1}} B^{m_{1}} \ldots A^{n_{k}} B^{m_{k}}
$$

We also set $|w|$ to be the length of $w$; i.e.

$$
n_{1}+m_{1}+\cdots+n_{k}+m_{k}
$$

Theorem 113 (Specht, 1940). Suppose $A, B \in M_{n}$. Then $A \sim_{\text {u.e. }} B$ if and only if $\operatorname{tr}\left(w\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right)=$ $\operatorname{tr}\left(w\left(B, B^{*}\right)\right)$ for all words $w$.
Proof.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Suppose $A \sim_{\text {u.e. }} B$; say $B=U^{*} A U$. Then $B^{k}=U^{*} A^{k} U$. Also $B^{*}=U^{*} A U$; so $\left(B^{*}\right)^{k}=U^{*}\left(A^{*}\right)^{k} U$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
w\left(B, B^{*}\right) & =B^{n_{1}}\left(B^{*}\right)^{m_{1}} \ldots B^{n_{k}}\left(B^{*}\right)^{m_{k}} \\
& =\left(U^{*} A^{n_{1}} U\right)\left(U^{*}\left(A^{*}\right)^{m_{1}} U\right) \ldots\left(U^{*} A^{n_{k}} U\right)\left(U^{*}\left(A^{*}\right)^{m_{k}} U\right) \\
& =U^{*} W\left(A, A^{*}\right) U
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
\operatorname{tr}(w(B, B))=\operatorname{tr}\left(U^{*} w\left(A, A^{*}\right) U\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(w\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right)
$$

$(\Longleftarrow)$
Lemma 114. Suppose $V, W$ are vector spaces with $\operatorname{span}\left\{v_{\alpha}: \alpha \in I\right\}=V$ and $\operatorname{span}\left\{w_{\alpha}: \alpha \in I\right\}=W$. Then there is linear $L: V \rightarrow W$ with $L\left(v_{\alpha}\right)=w_{\alpha}$ for all $\alpha \in I$ if and only if whenever

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} v_{\alpha_{i}}=0
$$

we also have

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} w_{\alpha_{i}}=0
$$

Definition 115. Let $\mathcal{A} \subseteq M_{n}$; then $\mathcal{A}$ is an algebra if

1. $\mathcal{A}$ is a vector subspace
2. If $x, y \in \mathcal{A}$ then $x y \in \mathcal{A}$.

It is a $*$-algebra if $X \in \mathcal{A}$ implies that $X^{*} \in \mathcal{A}$. If $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}$ are $*$-algebras, then a map $\pi: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ is called a *-homomorphism if

1. $\pi$ is linear
2. $\pi(x y)=\pi(x) \pi(y)$
3. $\pi\left(x^{*}\right)=\pi(x)^{*}$

Proposition 116. Let $A, B \in M_{n}$. Let

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{A} & =\operatorname{span}\left\{w\left(A, A^{*}\right): w \text { word }\right\} \\
\mathcal{B} & =\operatorname{span}\left\{w\left(B, B^{*}\right): w \text { word }\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

(Then these are $*$-algebras.) If for all words $w$ we have $\operatorname{tr}\left(w\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(w\left(B, B^{*}\right)\right)$ then there is a *-isomorphism $\pi: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ with $\pi\left(w\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right)=w\left(B, B^{*}\right)$.

Proof. By lemma, there is a linear map $\pi: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ satisfying the above if and only if

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} w_{i}\left(A, A^{*}\right)=0 \Longrightarrow \sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} w_{i}\left(B, B^{*}\right)=0
$$

Well, let

$$
\begin{aligned}
X & =\sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} w_{i}\left(A, A^{*}\right) \\
Y & =\sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} w_{i}\left(B, B^{*}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $X=\left(x_{i j}\right)$. Then

$$
X=0 \Longleftrightarrow \sum\left|x_{i j}\right|=0 \Longleftrightarrow \operatorname{tr}\left(X^{*} X\right)=0
$$

But

$$
X^{*} X=\sum \overline{\lambda_{j}} \lambda_{i} w_{j}\left(A, A^{*}\right)^{*} w_{i}\left(A, A^{*}\right)
$$

So

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left(X^{*} X\right)=\sum \lambda_{j} \lambda_{i} \operatorname{tr}\left(w_{j}\left(A, A^{*}\right)^{*} w_{i}\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right)=\sum \lambda_{j} \lambda_{i} \operatorname{tr}\left(w_{j}\left(B, B^{*}\right)^{*} w_{i}\left(B, B^{*}\right)\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(Y^{*} Y\right)
$$

So

$$
X=0 \Longrightarrow \operatorname{tr}\left(X^{*} X\right)=0 \Longrightarrow \operatorname{tr}\left(Y^{*} Y\right)=0 \Longrightarrow Y=0
$$

So there is a well-defined linear map $\pi$ with $\pi\left(w\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right)=w\left(B, B^{*}\right)$.
Claim 117. $\pi$ is $a *$-homomorphism.
Proof. Let

$$
\begin{aligned}
& X_{1}=\sum \lambda_{i} w_{i}\left(A, A^{*}\right) \\
& X_{2}=\sum \mu_{\ell} \widetilde{w}_{\ell}\left(A, A^{*}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\pi\left(X_{1} X_{2}\right) & =\pi\left(\sum \lambda_{i} \mu_{\ell} w_{i}\left(A, A^{*}\right) \widetilde{w}_{\ell}\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right) \\
& =\sum \lambda_{i} \mu_{\ell} \pi\left(w_{i}\left(A, A^{*}\right) \widetilde{w}_{\ell}\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right) \\
& =\sum \lambda_{i} \mu_{\ell} w_{i}\left(B, B^{*}\right) \widetilde{w}_{\ell}\left(B, B^{*}\right) \\
& =\pi\left(X_{1}\right) \pi\left(X_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, it is a $*$-homomorphism.
Claim 117

Note that the same proof shows there is $\rho: \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ such that $\rho\left(w\left(B, B^{*}\right)\right)=w\left(A, A^{*}\right)$; then $\rho=\pi^{-1}$.Proposition 116

Then the $*$-algebra generated by $\mathcal{A}$ is $*$-isomorphic to the $*$-algebra generated by $\mathcal{B}$. Wedderburn's theorem then yields

$$
\mathcal{A} \cong M_{n_{1}} \oplus \cdots \oplus M_{n_{k}} \cong \mathcal{B}
$$

It also yields that since $\mathcal{A} \subseteq M_{n}$ there are multiplicities $m_{1}, \ldots, m_{k}$ such that

$$
\mathcal{A}=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{lllllll}
A_{1} & & & & & & \\
& \ddots & & & & & \\
& & A_{1} & & & & \\
& & & \ddots & & & \\
& & & & A_{k} & & \\
& & & & & \ddots & \\
& & & & & & A_{k}
\end{array}\right)\right\}
$$

where $A_{i}$ shows up $m_{i}$ times. Similarly for $\mathcal{B}$, we get multiplicities $\widetilde{m}_{1}, \ldots, \widetilde{m}_{k}$. Since the traces are equal, we have $m_{i}=\widetilde{m}_{i}$; so the $*$-isomorphisms are implemented by a unitary.

Theorem 113
Theorem 118 (Pearcy 1968). Suppose $A, B \in M_{n}$. Then $A \sim_{\text {u.e. }} B$ if and only if $\operatorname{tr}\left(w\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(w\left(B, B^{*}\right)\right)$ for all $|w| \leq 2 n^{2}$. (This is $4^{n^{2}}$ words.)

We use two lemmata.
Lemma 119. Let $\mathcal{L}_{A}(d)=\operatorname{span}\left\{w\left(A, A^{*}\right):|w| \leq d\right\}$. Suppose $\mathcal{L}_{A}(d)=\mathcal{L}_{A}(d+1)$. Then $\mathcal{L}_{A}(d)=\mathcal{A}$.
Proof. Suppose $m=d+1+k$. Suppose $|w|=m$. Write $w=w_{1} w_{2}$ where $\left|w_{1}\right|=d+1$ and $\left|w_{2}\right|=k$. Then

$$
w\left(A, A^{*}\right)=w_{1}\left(A, A^{*}\right) w_{2}\left(A, A^{*}\right)
$$

But

$$
w_{1}\left(A, A^{*}\right)=\sum \lambda_{\ell} w_{\ell}\left(A, A^{*}\right)
$$

where $\left|w_{\ell}\right|=d$. So $w\left(A, A^{*}\right)$ is a linear combination of things of length $d+k$. So $\mathcal{L}_{A}(d+1+k)=\mathcal{L}_{A}(d+k)$. By induction, we have $\mathcal{L}_{A}(d+k)=\mathcal{L}_{A}(d)$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, and $\mathcal{A}=\mathcal{L}_{A}(d)$.
$\square$ Lemma 119
Lemma 120. $\mathcal{A}=\mathcal{L}_{A}\left(n^{2}\right)$.
Proof. Suppose there does not exist $d \leq n^{2}$ with $\mathcal{L}_{A}(d)=\mathcal{L}_{A}(d+1)$. Then $\{0\} \varsubsetneqq \mathcal{L}_{A}(1) \varsubsetneqq \mathcal{L}_{A}(2) \varsubsetneqq \ldots \varsubsetneqq$ $\mathcal{L}_{A}\left(n^{2}\right)$. So $\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{L}_{A}\left(n^{2}\right)\right) \geq n^{2}$. But $\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{A}) \leq n^{2}$, as $\mathcal{A} \subseteq M_{n}$. So $\mathcal{L}_{A}\left(n^{2}\right)=\mathcal{A}$.Lemma 120
Proof of Theorem 118.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Easy.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ Again, want to show that there is $\pi: \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ with $\pi\left(w\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right)=w\left(B, B^{*}\right)$ well-defined. We know that $\mathcal{A}=\mathcal{L}_{A}\left(n^{2}\right)$; for

$$
X=\sum \lambda_{i} w_{i}\left(A, A^{*}\right)
$$

and

$$
Y=\sum \lambda_{i} w_{i}\left(B, B^{*}\right)
$$

we now need $X=0 \Longrightarrow Y=0$. But

$$
\begin{aligned}
X=0 & \Longleftrightarrow \operatorname{tr}\left(X^{*} X\right)=0 \\
& \Longleftrightarrow \sum \lambda_{i} \overline{\lambda_{j}} \operatorname{tr}\left(w_{j}\left(A, A^{*}\right)^{*} w_{i}\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right) \\
& \Longleftrightarrow \sum \lambda_{i} \overline{\lambda_{j}} \operatorname{tr}\left(w_{j}\left(B, B^{*}\right)^{*} w_{i}\left(B, B^{*}\right)\right) \\
& \Longleftrightarrow \operatorname{tr}\left(Y^{*} Y\right)=0 \\
& \Longleftrightarrow Y=0
\end{aligned}
$$

since $\left|w_{j} w_{i}\right| \leq 2 n^{2}$.

Theorem 121 (Djokovic-Johnson 2007). Suppose $A, B \in M_{n}$. Then $A \sim_{\text {u.e. }} B$ if and only if $\operatorname{tr}\left(w\left(A, A^{*}\right)\right)=$ $\operatorname{tr}\left(w\left(B, B^{*}\right)\right)$ for some set of at most

$$
n \sqrt{\frac{2 n^{2}}{n-1}+\frac{1}{4}}+\frac{n}{2}-2
$$

words.
Fact 122. In the case $n=2$, it suffices to check the words $\left\{s, s^{2}\right.$, st $\}$. i.e.

$$
\left.A \sim_{\text {u.e. }} B \Longleftrightarrow \operatorname{tr}(A)=\operatorname{tr}(B), \operatorname{tr}\left(A^{2}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(B^{2}\right)\right), \operatorname{tr}\left(A A^{*}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(B B^{*}\right)
$$

In the case $n=3$, it suffices to check

$$
\left\{s, s^{2}, t s, s^{3}, s^{2} t, s^{2} t^{2}, s^{2} t^{2} s t\right\}
$$

In the case $n=4$, the paper exhibits 20 words.
Recall now the Householder transformations $U_{w}$ for $w \neq 0$.

Lemma 123. Let $\|x\|=\|u\|=1$ with $\langle x, u\rangle \geq 0$ and $w=u-x \neq 0$. Then $U_{w} u=x$ and $U_{w} x=u$.
Proof. Draw a picture? Lemma 123

Theorem 124 (Schur). Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Suppose $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$ are the roots of $p_{A}(t)$ (in some order). Then there is a unitary $U$ such that $U^{*} A U=T$ is upper triangular with diagonal entries $t_{i i}=\lambda_{i}$. Moreover, $U$ can be taken to be a product of Householder transformations.

Proof. Since $\lambda_{1} \in \sigma(A)$, we have that there is $u_{1} \neq 0$ such that $A u_{1}=\lambda_{1} u_{1}$ with $\left\|u_{1}\right\|=1$ and $\left\langle u_{1}, e_{1}\right\rangle \geq 0$. By the lemma, there is $w$ such that $U_{w} u_{1}=e_{1}$ and $U_{w} e_{1}=u_{1}$. But then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle U_{w}^{*} A U_{w} e_{1}, e_{i}\right\rangle & =\left\langle U_{w}^{*} A u_{1}, e_{i}\right\rangle \\
& =\left\langle U_{w}^{*} \lambda_{1} u_{1}, e_{i}\right\rangle \\
& =\lambda_{1}\left\langle U_{w}^{*} u_{1}, e_{i}\right\rangle \\
& =\lambda_{1}\left\langle e_{1}, e_{i}\right\rangle \\
& = \begin{cases}0 & i>1 \\
\lambda_{1} & \text { else }\end{cases}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

$$
U_{w}^{*} A U_{w}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\lambda_{1} & * \\
0 & A_{1}
\end{array}\right)
$$

for $A_{1} \in M_{n-1}$. But also

$$
\left(t-\lambda_{1}\right) \ldots\left(t-\lambda_{n}\right)=p_{A}(t)=p_{U_{w}^{*} A U_{w}}(t)=\left(t-\lambda_{1}\right) p_{A_{1}}(t)
$$

So $p_{A_{1}}(t)=\left(t-\lambda_{2}\right) \ldots\left(t-\lambda_{n}\right)$. We then repeat for $A_{1} \in M_{n-1}$; by induction, we get some product of unitaries such that $U^{*} A U$ has the desired form.

For the "moreover", recall that Householder unitaries are given by

$$
U_{w}=I-\frac{2}{\|w\|^{2}} w w^{*}
$$

Observe, however, that if $w \in \mathbb{C}^{n-1}$ and

$$
\widetilde{w}=\binom{0}{w_{1}}
$$

then

$$
\begin{aligned}
U_{\widetilde{w}} & =I_{n}-\frac{2}{\|\widetilde{w}\|^{2}} \widetilde{w} \widetilde{w}^{*} \\
& =I_{n}-\frac{2}{\|w\|^{2}}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 0 \\
0 & w_{1} w_{1}^{*}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & I_{n-1}-\frac{2}{\|w\|^{2}} w w^{*}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & U_{w}
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

So we in fact get that the unitaries we conjugated by were Householder transformations. Theorem 124
Corollary 125. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$; suppose $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$ are the roots of $p_{A}(t)$. Then $\operatorname{tr}\left(A^{k}\right)=\lambda_{1}^{k}+\cdots+\lambda_{n}^{k}$.
Proof. Pick a unitary $U$ such that

$$
U^{*} A U=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\lambda_{1} & * & * \\
0 & \ddots & * \\
0 & \ldots & \lambda_{n}
\end{array}\right)
$$

then

$$
\left(U^{*} A U\right)^{k}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\lambda_{1}^{k} & * & * \\
0 & \ddots & * \\
0 & \ldots & \lambda_{n}^{k}
\end{array}\right)
$$

so

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left(A^{k}=\operatorname{tr}\left(U^{*} A^{k} U\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\left(U^{*} A U\right)^{k}\right)=\lambda_{1}^{k}+\cdots+\lambda^{k}\right.
$$

$\square$ Corollary 125
Remark 126. By Newton's identities, we can mutually solve for $S_{1}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right), \ldots, S_{n}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$ in terms of $\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{n}$. But also recall that -1$)^{k} S_{k}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$ is the $k^{\text {th }}$ coefficient of $p_{A}(t)$. So the coefficients of $p_{A}(t)$ are uniquely determined by the $\mu_{k}=\operatorname{tr}\left(A^{k}\right)$. Hence $\operatorname{tr}(A), \ldots, \operatorname{tr}\left(A^{n}\right)$ determines $p_{A}(t)$, and thus $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$.

Theorem 127. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$; suppose $\varepsilon>0$. Then there is $B \in M_{n}$ such that $\|A-B\|_{2}<\varepsilon$ such that $B$ is invertible and diagonalizable.

Proof. Suppose $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$ are the roots of $p_{A}(t)$. Pick

$$
\left|\varepsilon_{i}\right|<\frac{\varepsilon}{\sqrt{n}}
$$

such that $\lambda_{1}+\varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}+\varepsilon_{n}$ all distinct and non-zero. Then, by Schur's theorem, we have some $U$ such that

$$
U^{*} A U=T=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\lambda_{1} & * & * \\
0 & \ddots & * \\
0 & 0 & \lambda_{n}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Let $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(\varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \varepsilon_{n}\right)$; let $R=T+D$. Then the roots of $p_{R}(t)$ are $\lambda_{1}+\varepsilon_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}+\varepsilon_{n}$. So $R$ is invertible and diagonal. Let $B=U R U^{*}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|A-B\|_{2}^{2} & =\operatorname{tr}\left((A-B)^{*}(A-B)\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(\left(U T U^{*}-U R U^{*}\right)^{*}\left(U T U^{*}-U R U^{*}\right)\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(\left(U(T-R) U^{*}\right)^{*}\left(U(T-R) U^{*}\right)\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(U D^{*} D U^{*}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(D^{*} D\right) \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|\varepsilon_{i}\right|^{2}<\varepsilon^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

and $B$ is invertible and diagonalizable.
Theorem 127
Lemma 128. Suppose

$$
\begin{aligned}
R & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & * \\
0 & R_{1}
\end{array}\right) \\
S & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
S_{1} & * \\
0 & S_{2}
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

where the blocking is $n=k+(n-k)$ (i.e. $R, S_{1} \in M_{k}$ ) and $S_{2}(1,1)=0$ and $S_{2}$ is upper triangular. Then

$$
R S=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & * \\
0 & x
\end{array}\right)
$$

is upper triangular, where the blocking is now $n=(k+1)+(n-(k+1))$.
Remark 129. If $q(t)=q_{n} t^{n}+\cdots+q_{0}$ and $U^{*} A U=T$, then $U^{*} A U=T$, so $q(T)=U^{*} q(A) U$.
Theorem 130 (Cayley-Hamilton). Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then $p_{A}(A)=0$.

Proof. Let $p_{A}(t)=\left(t-\lambda_{1}\right) \ldots\left(t-\lambda_{n}\right)$; apply Schur's theorem to get $U^{*} A U=T$ upper triangular with $t_{i i}=\lambda_{i}$. Then $T-\lambda_{1} I$ has a $1 \times 1$ block of 0 in the upper-left corner, and $T-\lambda_{2} I$ has a 0 in the $(2,2)$ entry. So, by lemma, we have that $\left(T-\lambda_{1} I\right)\left(T-\lambda_{2} I\right)$ has a $2 \times 2$ block of 0 in the top-left corner. Proceeding inductively, we get that $\left(T-\lambda_{1} I\right) \ldots\left(T-\lambda_{k} I\right)$ has a $k \times k$ block of 0 in the top-left corner, and $p_{A}(T)=0$. But then $p_{A}(A)=U^{*} p_{A}(T) U=0$.
Corollary 131. Suppose $A \in M_{n}^{-1}$. Then $A^{-1} \in \operatorname{span}\left\{I, A, \ldots, A^{n-1}\right\}$.
Proof. Well,

$$
p_{A}(t)=t^{n}+a_{n-1} t^{n-1}+\cdots+a_{1} t+a_{0}
$$

where $a_{0}=\operatorname{det}(A) \neq 0$. Then, by Cayley-Hamilton, we have

$$
0=\left(A^{n}+a_{n-1} A^{n-1}+\cdots+a_{1} A+a_{0} I\right) A^{-1}
$$

so

$$
0=A^{n-1}+a_{n-1} A^{n-2}+\cdots+a_{1} I+a_{0} A^{-1}
$$

at which point we can solve for $A^{-1}$.

## 4 Linear maps on matrices

Suppose $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{r} \in M_{n}$; suppose $B_{1}, \ldots, B_{r} \in M_{m}$. Then there is $L \rightarrow M_{n, m} \rightarrow M_{n, m}$ defined by

$$
L(Y)=A_{1} Y B_{1}+\cdots+A_{r} Y B_{r}
$$

These are called elementary linear maps.
Proposition 132. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ and $B \in M_{m}$. Let $L(Y)=A Y-Y B$. If $\sigma(A) \cap \sigma(B)=\emptyset$, then $L: M_{n, m} \rightarrow M_{n, m}$ is invertible.

Proof. Suppose $Y \in \operatorname{ker}(L)$; then $A Y=Y B$. So

$$
A^{2} Y=A(A Y)=A(Y B)=Y B^{2}
$$

and inductively $A^{k} Y=Y B^{k}$. Then for any polynomial $p(t)$, we have $p(A) Y=Y p(B)$. By Cayley-Hamilton, we have $0=p_{A}(t) Y=Y p_{A}(B)$. So

$$
\sigma\left(p_{A}(B)\right)=\left\{p_{A}(\lambda): \lambda \in \sigma(B)\right\}
$$

So $0 \notin \sigma\left(p_{A}(B)\right.$, and $p_{A}(B)$ is invertible. But $0=Y p_{A}(B)$; so $0=Y$. So $\operatorname{ker}(L)=\{0\}$, and $L$ is invertible. $\square$ Proposition 132

Corollary 133. Suppose $A \in M_{n}, B \in M_{m}$, and $X \in M_{n, m}$. If $\sigma(A) \cap \sigma(B)=\emptyset$, then

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & X \\
0 & B
\end{array}\right) \sim\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & 0 \\
0 & B
\end{array}\right)
$$

Proof. If $Y \in M_{n, m}$, then

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I_{n} & Y \\
0 & I_{m}
\end{array}\right)^{-1}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I_{n} & -Y \\
0 & I_{m}
\end{array}\right)
$$

By proposition, we have $L(Y)=A Y-Y B$ is surjective; so there is $Y$ such that $A Y-Y B=X$. But then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & Y \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & X \\
0 & B
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & Y \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)^{-1} & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & X+Y B \\
0 & B
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & -Y \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & X+Y B-A Y \\
0 & B
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & 0 \\
0 & B
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 134. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$; let $p_{A}(t)=\left(t-\lambda_{1}\right)^{n_{1}} \ldots\left(t-\lambda_{k}\right)^{n_{k}}$. Then

$$
A \sim\left(\begin{array}{lll}
T_{1} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & T_{k}
\end{array}\right)
$$

where each $T_{i}$ is upper triangular with diagonal entries all equal to $\lambda_{i}$.
Proof. List eigenvalues as $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{k}, \ldots, \lambda_{k}$ where $\lambda_{i}$ appears $n_{i}$ times. By Schur, there is a unitary $U$ such that $U^{*} A U$ is upper triangular with diagonal entries equal to the above list; then

$$
U^{*} A U=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
T_{11} & T_{12} & \ldots & T_{1 k} \\
0 & T_{22} & \ldots & T_{2 k} \\
\vdots & & \ddots & \\
0 & \ldots & T_{k k} &
\end{array}\right)
$$

with each $T_{i i}$ is $n_{i} \times n_{i}$ and upper triangular with diagonal entries $\lambda_{i}$. Blocking off the upper-left block, i.e. with $A=T_{11}$ and

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
T_{22} & & \\
& \ddots & \\
& & T_{k k}
\end{array}\right)
$$

the corollary then yields that $U^{*} A U$ is similar to

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
T_{11} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & T_{12} & & \\
\vdots & & \ddots & \\
0 & 0 & \ldots & T_{k k}
\end{array}\right)
$$

We then proceed by induction.Theorem 134

Definition 135. Let $J_{k}(\lambda) \in M_{k}$ be given by

$$
J_{k}(\lambda)=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\lambda & 1 & & & 0 \\
0 & \lambda & 1 & & \\
& & \ddots & \ddots & \\
& & & \lambda & 1 \\
0 & & & & \lambda
\end{array}\right)
$$

This is called the elementary Jordan block.
If we want to prove that each $A \in M_{n}$ is similar to a block diagonal matri each of whose blocks is of the form $J_{k}(\lambda)$ then it suffices to prove it for matrices of the form

$$
T_{i}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\lambda_{i} & & * \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & \lambda_{i}
\end{array}\right)
$$

i.e. $T_{i}=\lambda_{i} I+N_{i}$ where $N_{i}$ is strictly upper triangular. If $N$ is strictly upper triangular, we can prove $N$ is similar to a block diagonal with blocks $J_{k}(0)$. So $T=\lambda_{i} I+N$ is similar to a block diagonal matrix with blocks $J_{k}\left(\lambda_{i}\right)$.
Remark 136. If $N \in M_{m}$ is strictly upper triangular, then $N^{m}=0$.
Definition 137. We say $N \in M_{n}$ is nilpotent of there is $k$ such that $N^{k}=0$. The least such $k$ is called the order of nilpotency.

Theorem 138. Let $N \in M_{n}$ be nilpotent of order $k$. Then

$$
N \sim\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
J_{m_{1}}(0) & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & J_{m_{r}}(0)
\end{array}\right)
$$

Furthermore, let $\ell_{i}$ be the number of Jordan blocks of size $i($ for $1 \leq i \leq k)$; let $d_{i}=\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{N}\left(N^{i}\right)\right)$. Then

$$
(\min \{i, j\})\left(\begin{array}{c}
\ell_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\ell_{k}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
d_{1} \\
\vdots \\
d_{k}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Remark 139. Since we know that $(\min \{i, j\})$ is invertible, we get that

$$
\left(\begin{array}{c}
\ell_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\ell_{k}
\end{array}\right)=(\min \{i, j\})^{-1}\left(\begin{array}{c}
d_{1} \\
\vdots \\
d_{k}
\end{array}\right)
$$

So the $d_{i}$ determines the Jordan structure.

## 5 QR factorization and Gram-Schmidt

Recall that if

$$
B=\left(\overrightarrow{b_{1}}|\cdots| \overrightarrow{b_{m}}\right)
$$

and $R=\left(r_{i j}\right)$, then

$$
B R=\left(\sum_{j=1}^{m} r_{1 j} \overrightarrow{b_{j}} \mid \ldots\right)
$$

Recall $R \in M_{m, n}$ is called upper triangular when $r_{i j}=0$ for all $i>j$.
Theorem 140 (QR). Let $A \in M_{m, n}$. Then there is upper triangular $R \in M_{m, n}$ and unitary $Q \in M_{m}$ such that $A=Q R$.

Proof.
Case 1. Suppose $m=n$ and $A$ is invertible. Then

$$
A=\left(\overrightarrow{a_{1}}|\cdots| \overrightarrow{a_{m}}\right)
$$

with $\left\{\overrightarrow{a_{1}}, \ldots, \overrightarrow{a_{m}}\right\}$ linearly independent and spanning $\mathbb{C}^{m}$. Recall that Gram-Schmidt gives us $\left\{\overrightarrow{u_{1}}, \ldots, \overrightarrow{u_{m}}\right\}$. orthonormal such that

$$
\operatorname{span}\left\{\overrightarrow{a_{1}}, \ldots, \overrightarrow{a_{j}}\right\}=\operatorname{span}\left\{\overrightarrow{u_{1}}, \ldots, \overrightarrow{u_{j}}\right\}
$$

So $\overrightarrow{a_{j}} \in \operatorname{span}\left\{\overrightarrow{u_{1}}, \ldots, \overrightarrow{u_{j}}\right\}$, and

$$
\overrightarrow{a_{j}}=\sum_{i=1}^{j} r_{i j} \overrightarrow{u_{j}}
$$

Set $r_{i, j}=0$ for $i>j$. Since $\left\{\overrightarrow{u_{1}}, \ldots, \overrightarrow{u_{m}}\right\}$ is orthonormal, we have that $Q=\left(\overrightarrow{u_{1}}|\cdots| \overrightarrow{u_{m}}\right)$ is unitary. Let $R=\left(r_{i j}\right)$. Then $Q R=A$.

Case 2. Suppose $m=n$ and $A$ is singular. Then $0 \in \sigma(A)$. Let

$$
t=\min \{|\lambda|: \lambda \in \sigma(A), \lambda \neq 0\}>0
$$

Let $\left|\varepsilon_{n}\right|<t$ with $\varepsilon_{n} \rightarrow 0$ and $A(n)=A-\varepsilon_{n} I_{n}$ is invertible. So $A(n)=U(n) R(n)$. Note that

$$
\|R(n)\|_{2}^{2}=\operatorname{tr}\left(R_{n}^{*} R_{n}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(R(n)^{*} U(n)^{*} U(n) R(n)\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(A(n)^{*} A(n)\right.
$$

is bounded. So $R(n)$ is bounded. Pick a subsequence such that $U\left(n_{k}\right) \rightarrow Q$ unitary and $R\left(n_{k}\right) \rightarrow R$ upper triangular. Then

$$
A=\lim _{k} A\left(n_{k}\right)=\lim _{k} U\left(n_{k}\right) R\left(n_{k}\right)=Q R
$$

Case 3. Suppose $m<n$. Write $A=\left[A_{1} \mid A_{2}\right]$ where $A_{1} \in M_{m}, A_{2} \in M_{m, n-m}$. By earlier case $A_{1}=Q_{1} R_{1}$ with $R_{1} \in M_{m, n}$. Set $R_{2}=Q^{*} A_{2}$. Check

$$
Q\left[R_{1} \mid R_{2}\right]=\left[Q R_{1} \mid Q R_{2}\right]=A
$$

Case 4. Suppose $m>n$. Let $\widetilde{A}=[A \mid 0] \in M_{m}$. Then $\widetilde{A}=Q R$ where $R \in M_{m}$. Write $R=\left[R_{1} \mid *\right]$ where $R_{1} \in M_{m, n}$. Check that $A=Q R_{1}$.

## 6 Normal and Hermitian

Definition 141. We say a matrix $H$ is Hermitian if $H=H^{*}$. We let $\left(M_{n}\right)_{h}=\left\{H \in M_{n}: H=H^{*}\right\}$.
Remark 142. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$; set

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{Re}(A)=\frac{A+A^{*}}{2} \\
& \operatorname{Im}(A)=\frac{A-A^{*}}{2 i}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

1. $\operatorname{Re}(A), \operatorname{Im}(A) \in\left(M_{n}\right)_{h}$
2. $A=\operatorname{Re}(A)+i \operatorname{Im}(A)$
3. If $A=H+i K$ for $H, K \in\left(M_{n}\right)_{h}$, then $H=\operatorname{Re}(A)$ and $K=\operatorname{Im}(A)$.

Proof.
1.

$$
\operatorname{Re}(A)^{*}=\left(\frac{A+A^{*}}{2}\right)^{*}=\frac{A^{*}+A}{2}=\operatorname{Re}(A)
$$

Similarly we have $\operatorname{Im}(A)^{*}=\operatorname{Im}(A)$.
2. Easy.
3. If $A=H+i K$ then

$$
\operatorname{Re}(A)=\frac{A+A^{*}}{2}=\frac{H+i K+(H+i K)^{*}}{2}=\frac{H+i K+H-i K}{2}=H
$$

and similarly $\operatorname{Im}(A)=K$.

Definition 143. The commutator of $X$ and $Y$ is $[X, Y]=X Y-Y X$.

Remark 144. $[X, Y]=0$ if and only if $X$ and $Y$ are commuting.
Definition 145. We say $A \in M_{n}$ is normal if $\left[A, A^{*}\right]=0$.
Remark 146. Hermitian and unitary matrices are normal.
Proposition 147. If $A$ is normal an $U$ is unitary, then $U^{*} A U$ is normal.
Proof.

$$
\left(U^{*} A U\right)^{*}\left(U^{*} A U\right)=U^{*} A^{*} U U^{*} A U=U^{*} A A^{*} U=\left(U^{*} A U\right)\left(U^{*} A^{*} U\right)=\left(U^{*} A U\right)\left(U^{*} A U\right)^{*}
$$Proposition 147

Theorem 148. Suppose $A=\left(a_{i j}\right) \in M_{n}$ with $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$ the roots of $p_{A}(t)$. Then the following are equivalent:

1. A is normal.
2. $[\operatorname{Re}(A), \operatorname{Im}(A)]=0$.
3. $A$ is unitarily diagonalizable.
4. 

$$
\sum_{i, j=1}^{n}\left|a_{i j}\right|^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|\lambda_{i}\right|^{2}
$$

5. There is an orthonormal basis for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$ of eigenvectors of $A$.

Proof.
(1) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (2) Well,
$A$ normal $\Longleftrightarrow A^{*} A=A A^{*}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Longleftrightarrow(\operatorname{Re}(A)-i \operatorname{Im}(A))(\operatorname{Re}(A)+i \operatorname{Im}(A))=(\operatorname{Re}(A)+i \operatorname{Im}(A))(\operatorname{Re}(A)-i \operatorname{Im}(A)) \\
& \Longleftrightarrow \operatorname{Re}(A)^{2}+\operatorname{Im}(A)^{2}+i(\operatorname{Re}(A) \operatorname{Im}(A)-\operatorname{Im}(A) \operatorname{Re}(A))=\operatorname{Re}(A)^{2}+\operatorname{Im}(A)^{2}+i[\operatorname{Im}(A) \operatorname{Re}(A)-\operatorname{Re}(A) \operatorname{Im}(A \\
& \Longleftrightarrow \operatorname{Re}(A) \operatorname{Im}(A)=\operatorname{Im}(A) \operatorname{Re}(A)
\end{aligned}
$$

(3) $\Longrightarrow$ (1) Suppose there is unitary $U$ such that $U^{*} A U=D$ where $D$ is diagonal. Then $A=U D U^{*}$ and $D^{*} D=D D^{*}=\operatorname{diag}\left(\left|\lambda_{1}\right|^{2}, \ldots,\left|\lambda_{n}\right|^{2}\right)$. So, by previous proposition, we have that $A$ is normal.
$\mathbf{( 1 )} \Longrightarrow$ (3) By Schur there is a unitary $U$ such that $U^{*} A U=T=\left(t_{i j}\right)$ is upper triangular. By proposition, we have that $T$ is normal. So $T^{*} T=T T^{*}$. But

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(T^{*} T\right)_{i, i} & =\left|t_{i, i}\right|^{2} \\
\left(T T^{*}\right)_{i, i} & =\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left|t_{i, j}\right|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
\sum_{j>i}\left|t_{i j}\right|^{2}=0
$$

and $T$ is diagonal. So $T=\operatorname{diag}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$.
$\mathbf{( 3 )} \Longrightarrow$ (4) Suppose $U^{*} A U=D=\operatorname{diag}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{N}\right)$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i, j=1}^{n}\left|a_{i j}\right|^{2} & =\operatorname{tr}\left(A^{*} A\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(\left(U D U^{*}\right)^{*}\left(U D U^{*}\right)\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(U D D^{*} U^{*}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{tr}\left(D D^{*}\right) \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|\lambda_{i}\right|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

$\mathbf{( 4 )} \Longrightarrow$ (3) By Schur, we have unitary $U$ such that $U^{*} A U=T$ is upper triangular with $t_{i i}=\lambda_{i}$. Then

$$
\sum\left|t_{i j}\right|^{2}=\operatorname{tr}\left(T^{*} T\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(A^{*} A\right)=\sum\left|a_{i j}\right|^{2}=\sum\left|\lambda_{i}\right|^{2}
$$

So

$$
\sum_{i \neq j}\left|t_{i j}\right|^{2}=0
$$

So $T$ is diagonal.
(3) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (5) If $U$ is unitary, then $U e_{i}=u_{i}$ is an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors.

Corollary 149. The following are equivalent.

1. $H=H^{*}$.
2. There is unitary $U$ such that $U^{*} H U=D$ with real diagonal entries.
3. There is an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors for $H$ with real eigenvalues.
4. $H$ is normal and $\left\{\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$.

### 6.1 Hermitian matrices

These show up in a lot of places.

1. Suppose $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is a domain; suppose $f: D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is $C^{2}$. Then

$$
\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{i} \partial x_{j}} f=\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{j} \partial x_{i}} f
$$

Hence the Hessian

$$
H_{f}(x)=\left(\frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial x_{i} \partial x_{j}}(x)\right) \in M_{n}
$$

has $H_{f}(x)^{*}=H_{f}(x)^{t}=H_{f}(x)$.
2. Let $G$ be a graph on $n$ vertices. Consider the adjacency matrix $A_{G}=\left(a_{i j}\right)$ where

$$
a_{i, j}= \begin{cases}1 & (i, j) \text { an edge } \\ 0 & \text { else }\end{cases}
$$

Then $A_{G}^{*}=A_{G}^{t}=A_{G}$.
We stick to $\mathbb{C}$ instead of $\mathbb{R}$. The key difference: given

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
a & b \\
-b & a
\end{array}\right)
$$

for $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$, we note that

$$
\left\langle A\binom{x}{y},\binom{x}{y}\right\rangle=a x^{2}+b y^{2}+a b(x y-y x)
$$

and $A \neq A^{t}$. On the other hand, in the case of $\mathbb{C}$, we have the following:
Theorem 150. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then $A=A^{*} \Longleftrightarrow\langle A v, v\rangle \in \mathbb{R}$ for all $v \in \mathbb{C}^{n}$.
Proof.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Well,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\overline{\langle A v, v\rangle} & =\overline{v^{*} A v} \\
& =\left(v^{*} A v\right)^{*} \\
& =v^{*} A^{*} v \\
& =v^{*} A v \\
& =\langle A v, v\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

So $\langle A v, v\rangle \in \mathbb{R}$.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ Note that

$$
\left\langle A e_{j}, e_{i}\right\rangle=a_{i, j}
$$

Then

$$
a_{i i}=\left\langle A e_{i}, e_{i}\right\rangle \in \mathbb{R}
$$

Let $z \in \mathbb{C}$. Then

$$
\mathbb{R} \ni\left\langle A\left(e_{k}+z e_{\ell}\right),\left(e_{k}+z e_{\ell}\right)\right\rangle=a_{k, k}+\bar{z} a_{\ell, k}+z a_{k, \ell}+|z|^{2} a_{\ell, \ell}
$$

So $\bar{z} a_{\ell, k}+z a_{k, \ell} \in \mathbb{R}$ for all $z \in \mathbb{C}$. Let $a_{\ell, k}=x_{1}+i y_{1}$; let $a_{k, \ell}=x_{2}+i y_{2}$.
Taking $z=1$ then yields $x_{1}+x_{2}+i\left(y_{1}+y_{2}\right) \in \mathbb{R}$. So $y_{2}=-y_{1}$. Taking $z=i$ yields $-i x_{1}+y_{1}+i x_{2}-y_{2} \in \mathbb{R}$, and $x_{1}=x_{2}$. So $a_{k, \ell}=x_{1}-i y_{1}=\overline{a_{\ell, k}}$. So $A=A^{*}$.

Remark 151. Suppose $H=H^{*}$. Then $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$ are real. We always order $\lambda_{1} \leq \cdots \leq \lambda_{n}$.
Theorem 152 (Rayleigh-Ritz). Suppose $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}$. Then

1. $\lambda_{1}\|x\|_{2}^{2} \leq\langle A x, x\rangle \leq \lambda_{n}\|x\|_{2}^{2}$ for all $x \in \mathbb{C}$.
2. 

$$
\lambda_{n}=\max _{x \neq 0} \frac{\langle A x, x\rangle}{\|x\|_{2}^{2}}=\max _{\|x\|_{2}=1}\langle A x, x\rangle
$$

3. 

$$
\lambda_{1}=\min _{x \neq 0} \frac{\langle A x, x\rangle}{\|x\|_{2}^{2}}=\min _{\|x\|_{2}=1}\langle A x, x\rangle
$$

Proof.

1. We know there is $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ an orthonormal basis for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$ such that $A u_{i}=\lambda_{i} u_{i}$. Let

$$
x=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_{i} u_{i}
$$

Then

$$
\|x\|_{2}^{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2}
$$

So

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle A x, x\rangle & =\left\langle\sum \alpha_{i} A u_{i}, \sum \alpha_{i} u_{i}\right\rangle \\
& =\left\langle\sum \alpha_{i} \lambda_{i} u_{i}, \sum \alpha_{i} u_{i}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2} \lambda_{i}
\end{aligned}
$$

so $\lambda_{1}\|x\|_{2}^{2} \leq\langle A x, x\rangle \leq \lambda_{n}\|x\|_{2}^{2}$.
2. Similar.
3. Similar.

Corollary 153. Suppose $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}$; suppose $x \in \mathbb{C}^{n}$ with $\|x\|=1$. Let $\alpha=\langle A x, x\rangle$. Then $A$ has an eigenvalue in $[\alpha,+\infty)$ and in $(-\infty, \alpha]$.

Proof. By Rayleigh-Ritz, we know $\lambda_{1} \leq \alpha \leq \lambda_{n}$.
Lemma 154 (Subspace intersection lemma). Suppose $V_{1}, V_{2}$ are subspaces of $W$. Then $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}+V_{2}\right)+$ $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)$.

Proof. Consider $L: V_{1} \oplus V_{2} \rightarrow V_{1}+V_{2}$ given by $L\left(v_{1}, v_{2}\right)=v_{1}-v_{2}$. Then $\mathcal{R}(L)=V_{1}+V_{2}$ and $\mathcal{N}(L)=$ $\left\{(v, v): v \in V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right\} \cong V_{1} \cap V_{2}$. By rank-nullity, we have

$$
\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}+V_{2}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{R}(L))+\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{N}(L))=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \oplus V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)
$$

Lemma 154
Corollary 155. If $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}+V_{2}\right) \geq 1$, then $V_{1} \cap V_{2} \neq\{0\}$.
Theorem 156 (Courant-Fischer). Let $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}$. Let $\lambda_{1} \leq \cdots \leq \lambda_{n}$ be the roots of $p_{A}(t)$. Suppose $1 \leq k \leq n$; suppose $S \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n}$. Then
1.

$$
\lambda_{k}=\min _{\operatorname{dim}(S)=k} \max _{\substack{x \in S \\\|x\|=1}}\langle A x, x\rangle
$$

2. 

$$
\lambda_{k}=\max _{\operatorname{dim}(S)=n-k+1} \min _{\substack{x \in S \\\|x\|=1}}\langle A x, x\rangle
$$

Proof. Let $A u_{i}=\lambda_{i} u_{i}$ where $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ is orthonormal.

1. Let $S_{0}=\operatorname{span}\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{k}\right\}$. Suppose $x \in S_{0}$ with $\|x\|=1$. Then

$$
x=\sum_{i=1}^{k} \alpha_{i} u_{i}
$$

so

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{k}\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2}=1
$$

Thus

$$
\langle A x, x\rangle=\left\langle\sum_{i=1}^{k} \alpha_{i} \lambda_{i} u_{i}, \sum_{i j=1}^{k} \alpha_{j} u_{j}\right\rangle=\sum_{i=1}^{k}\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2} \lambda_{i} \leq \sum_{i=1}^{k}\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2} \lambda_{k}=\lambda_{k}
$$

So

$$
\lambda_{k} \leq \min _{\operatorname{dim}(S)=k} \max _{\substack{x \in S \\\|x\|=1}}\langle A x, x\rangle
$$

For the other direction, suppose $S \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n} \operatorname{has} \operatorname{dim}(S)=k$. Let $S^{\prime}=\operatorname{span}\left\{u_{k}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$. Then $\operatorname{dim}\left(S^{\prime}\right)=n-(k-1)=n-k+1$. So $\operatorname{dim}(S)+\operatorname{dim}\left(S^{\prime}\right)=n+1>\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathbb{C}^{n}\right) \geq \operatorname{dim}\left(S+S^{\prime}\right)$, and

$$
\operatorname{dim}(S)+\operatorname{dim}\left(S^{\prime}\right)-\operatorname{dim}\left(S+S^{\prime}\right) \geq 1
$$

So $S \cap S^{\prime} \neq\{0\}$. Pick $x \in S \cap S^{\prime}$ with $\|x\|=1$. Then

$$
x=\sum_{j=k}^{n} \alpha_{j} u_{j}
$$

with

$$
\sum_{j=k}^{n}\left|\alpha_{j}\right|^{2}=1
$$

So

$$
\langle A x, x\rangle=\sum_{j=k}^{n}\left|\alpha_{j}\right|^{2} \lambda_{j} \geq \lambda_{k}
$$

So

$$
\lambda_{k} \leq \max _{\substack{x \in S \\\|x\|=1}}\langle A x, x\rangle
$$

for all $S$ with $\operatorname{dim}(S)=k$. So

$$
\lambda_{k} \leq \inf _{\operatorname{dim}(S)=k} \max _{\substack{x \in S \\\|x\|=1}}\langle A x, x\rangle
$$

But for $S_{0}=\operatorname{span}\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{k}\right\}$, we can show that

$$
\max _{\substack{x \in S \\\|x\| \leq 1}}\langle A x, x\rangle=\lambda_{k}
$$

So the infimum is attained at $S_{0}$; so we have a minimum.
2. Proof similar; start with $S_{0}=\operatorname{span}\left\{u_{k}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$.

Theorem 157. Suppose $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}$; let $\lambda_{1} \leq \cdots \leq \lambda_{n}$ be the roots of $p_{A}(t)$. Let $S \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n}$ have $\operatorname{dim}(S)=k$. Suppose $c \in \mathbb{R}$ satisfies
(a) $c \leq\langle A x, x\rangle$ for all $x \in S$ with $\|x\|=1$. Then $c \leq \lambda_{n-k+1}$.
(a') $c<\langle A x, x\rangle$ for all $x \in S$ with $\|x\|=1$. Then $c<\lambda_{n-k+1}$.
(b) $\langle A x, x\rangle \leq c$ for all $x \in S$ with $\|x\|=1$. Then $\lambda_{k} \leq c$.
(b') $\langle A x, x\rangle<c$ for all $x \in S$ with $\|x\|=1$. Then $\lambda_{k}<c$.
Proof. Let $A u_{i}=\lambda_{i} u_{i}$ for $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ orthonormal.
(a) Let $S_{1}=\operatorname{span}\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n-k+1}\right\}$. Then

$$
\operatorname{dim}(S)+\operatorname{dim}\left(S_{1}\right)-\operatorname{dim}\left(S+S_{1}\right) \geq k+n-k+1-n \geq 1
$$

So $S \cap S_{1} \neq\{0\}$. Pick $x \in S \cap S_{1}$ with $\|x\|=1$. Then

$$
x=\sum_{j=1}^{n-k+1} \alpha_{j} u_{j}
$$

So

$$
c \leq\langle A x, x\rangle=\sum_{j=1}^{n-k+1}\left|\alpha_{j}\right|^{2} \lambda_{j} \leq \lambda_{n-k+1}
$$

(a') Identical except for the last line.
(b) Look at $-A$. This has eigenvalues $-\lambda_{n} \leq \cdots \leq-\lambda_{1}$. Then since $\langle A x, x\rangle \leq c$, we have $-c \leq\langle-A x, x\rangle$. Apply (a) to this: so

$$
-c \leq-\lambda_{n-k+1}(-A)=-\lambda_{k}
$$

So $\lambda_{k} \leq c$.
(b') Similar.

Notation 158. For $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}$, we let $\lambda_{1}(A) \leq \cdots \leq \lambda_{n}(A)$ be the eigenvalues.
Theorem 159 (Weyl). Suppose $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}$ and $B=B^{*} \in M_{n}$. Then

1. $\lambda_{i}(A+B) \leq \lambda_{i+j}(A)+\lambda_{n-j}(B)$ for $0 \leq j \leq n-1$ and $1 \leq i \leq n$, with equality if and only if there is $x \neq 0$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
A x & =\lambda_{i+j}(A) x \\
B x & =\lambda_{n-j}(B) x \\
(A+B) x & =\lambda_{i}(A+B) x
\end{aligned}
$$

2. $\lambda_{i-j+1}(A)+\lambda_{j}(B) \leq \lambda_{i}(A+B)$ for $1 \leq j \leq i$ with equality if and only if there is $x \neq 0$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
A x & =\lambda_{i-j+1}(A) x \\
B x & =\lambda_{j}(B) x \\
(A+B) x & =\lambda_{i}(A+B) x
\end{aligned}
$$

Lemma 160 (Second subspace lemma). Suppose $S_{1}, \ldots, S_{k} \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n}$ are subspaces. Let

$$
\delta=\operatorname{dim}\left(S_{1}\right)+\cdots+\operatorname{dim}\left(S_{k}\right)-(k-1) n
$$

Then $\operatorname{dim}\left(S_{1} \cap \cdots \cap S_{k}\right) \geq \delta$.
Proof. Let

$$
L: \bigoplus_{i=1}^{k} S_{i} \rightarrow \bigoplus_{i=1}^{k-1} \mathbb{C}^{n}
$$

be $L\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{k}\right)=\left(v_{1}-v_{2}, v_{2}-v_{3}, \ldots, v_{k-1}-v_{k}\right)$. Then

$$
\mathcal{N}(L)=\left\{(v, v, \ldots, v): v \in S_{1} \cap \cdots \cap S_{k}\right\}
$$

Then

$$
\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{R}(L))+\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{N}(L))=\operatorname{dim}\left(\bigoplus_{i=1}^{k} S_{i}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{k} \operatorname{dim}\left(S_{i}\right)
$$

Hence

$$
\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{N}(L)) \geq\left(\sum_{i=1}^{k} \operatorname{dim}\left(S_{i}\right)\right)-\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{R}(L)) \geq \sum_{i=1}^{k}-(k-1) n=\delta
$$Lemma 160

Proof of Theorem 159.

1. Let ; let $B v_{i}=\lambda_{i}(B) v_{i}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
A u_{i} & =\lambda_{i}(A) u_{i} \\
B v_{i} & =\lambda_{i}(B) v_{i} \\
(A+B) z_{i} & =\lambda_{i}(A+B) z_{i} \\
S_{1} & =\operatorname{span}\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{i+j}\right\} \\
S_{2} & =\operatorname{span}\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n-j}\right\} \\
S_{3} & =\operatorname{span}\left\{z_{i}, \ldots, z_{n}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{dim}\left(S_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(S_{2}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(S_{3}\right)-(3-1) n & =i+j+n-j+n-(i-1)-2 n \\
& =2 n+1-2 n \\
& \geq 1
\end{aligned}
$$

So $\operatorname{dim}\left(S_{1} \cap S_{2} \cap S_{3}\right) \geq 1$, and there is $x \in S_{1} \cap S_{2} \cap S_{3}$ with $\|x\|=1$. Write

$$
x=\sum_{\ell=i}^{n} \alpha_{\ell} z_{\ell}
$$

Then $\lambda_{i}(A+B) \leq\langle(A+B) x, x\rangle$ since

$$
(A+B) x=\sum_{\ell=i}^{n} \alpha_{\ell} \lambda_{\ell}(A+B) z_{\ell}
$$

and thus

$$
\langle(A+B) x, x\rangle=\sum_{\ell=1}^{n}\left|\alpha_{\ell}\right|^{2} \lambda_{\ell}(A+B) \geq \lambda_{i}(A+B)
$$

Now, $x \in S_{1}$, so we may write

$$
x=\sum_{\ell=1}^{i+j} \beta_{\ell} u_{\ell}
$$

Then

$$
\langle A x, x\rangle=\sum_{\ell=1}^{i+j}\left|\beta_{\ell}\right|^{2} \lambda_{\ell}(A) \leq \lambda_{i+j}(A)
$$

Similarly, $x \in S_{2}$, so we may write

$$
x=\sum_{\ell=1}^{n-j} \gamma_{\ell} v_{\ell}
$$

So

$$
\langle B x, x\rangle \leq \lambda_{n-j}(B)
$$

Putting it all together, we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda_{i}(A+B) & \leq\langle(A+B) x, x\rangle \\
& =\langle A x, x\rangle+\langle B x, x\rangle \\
& \leq \lambda_{i+j}(A)+\lambda_{n-j}(B)
\end{aligned}
$$

If equality holds then

$$
\lambda_{i}(A+B)=\langle(A+B) x, x\rangle=\langle A x, x\rangle+\langle B x, x\rangle=\lambda_{i+j}(A)+\lambda_{n-j}(B)
$$

and thus

$$
\begin{aligned}
A x & =\lambda_{i}(A) x \\
B x & =\lambda_{n-j}(B) x \\
(A+B) x & =\lambda_{i}(A+B) x
\end{aligned}
$$

(because $S_{1} \cap S_{2} \cap S_{3} \neq\{0\}$, we have that any $x \in S_{1} \cap S_{2} \cap S_{3}$ is simultaneously an eigenvector for $A$, $B$, and $A+B$ with the appropriate eigenvalue.)
Conversely, if

$$
\begin{aligned}
A x & =\lambda_{i}(A) x \\
B x & =\lambda_{n-j}(B) x \\
(A+B) x & =\lambda_{i}(A+B) x
\end{aligned}
$$

then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda_{i}(A+B) & =\langle(A+B) x, x\rangle \\
& =\langle A x, x\rangle+\langle B x, x\rangle \\
& =\lambda_{i+j}(A)+\lambda_{n-j}(B)
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Substitute $-A,-B,-(A+B)$ : let

$$
\begin{aligned}
\widehat{i} & =n-i+1 \\
\widehat{j} & =j-1
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
-\lambda_{i}(A+B) & =\lambda_{n-i+1}(-A-B) \\
& \leq \lambda_{\widehat{i}+\widehat{j}}(-A)+\lambda_{n-\widehat{j}}(-B) \\
& =\lambda_{n-i+j}(-A)+\lambda_{n-j+1}(-B) \\
& =-\lambda_{i-j+1}(A)-\lambda_{j}(B)
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
\lambda_{i}(A+B) \geq \lambda_{i-j+1}(A)+\lambda_{j}(B)
$$

Theorem 161 (Cauchy's eigenvalue interlacing theorem). Suppose $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}$; let $\lambda_{i}=\lambda_{i}(A)$. Suppose $y \in \mathbb{C}^{n}, a \in \mathbb{R}$. Set

$$
\widehat{A}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & y \\
y^{*} & a
\end{array}\right)=\widehat{A}^{*} \in M_{n+1}
$$

Let $\widehat{\lambda_{i}}=\lambda_{i}(\widehat{A})$. Then

$$
\widehat{\lambda_{1}} \leq \lambda_{1} \leq \widehat{\lambda_{2}} \leq \lambda_{2} \leq \cdots \leq \widehat{\lambda_{n}} \leq \lambda_{n} \leq \widehat{\lambda_{n+1}}
$$

Proof. Let $1 \leq k \leq n$. We show $\widehat{\lambda_{k}} \leq \lambda_{k} \leq \widehat{\lambda_{k+1}}$. We identify

$$
\mathbb{C}^{n}=\left\{\binom{x}{0}: x \in \mathbb{C}^{n}\right\} \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n+1}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \widehat{\lambda_{k}}=\min _{\substack{S \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n+1} \\
\operatorname{dim}(S)=k}} \max _{\substack{\|\widehat{x}\|=1 \\
\widehat{x} \in S}}\langle\widehat{A} \widehat{x}, \widehat{x}\rangle \\
& \leq \min _{\substack{S \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n} \\
\operatorname{dim}(S)=k\\
}} \max _{\substack{\|\widehat{x}\|=1 \\
\widehat{x} \in S \\
\widehat{x}=[x \mid 0]^{t}}}\left\langle\widehat{A}\binom{x}{0},\binom{x}{0}\right\rangle \\
& =\min _{\substack{S \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n} \\
\operatorname{dim}(S)=k}} \max _{[x \mid 0]^{t} \in S}\langle A x, x\rangle \\
& =\lambda_{k} \\
& =\max _{\substack{S \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n} \\
\operatorname{dim}(S)=n-k+1}} \min _{\substack{x \in S \\
\|x\|=1}}\langle A x, x\rangle \\
& =\max _{\substack{S \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n} \\
\operatorname{dim}(S)=n-k+1}} \min _{\substack{[x \mid 0]^{t} \in S \\
\|[x \mid 0]\|=1}}\left\langle\widehat{A}\binom{x}{0},\binom{x}{0}\right\rangle \\
& \leq \max _{\substack{S \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n+1} \\
\operatorname{dim}(S)=(n+1)-(k+1)+1}} \min _{\substack{\widehat{x} \in S \\
\|x\|=1}}\langle\widehat{A} \widehat{x}, \widehat{x}\rangle \\
& =\widehat{\lambda_{k+1}}
\end{aligned}
$$

As a corollary, we get another persistence theorem:
Corollary 162. Suppose $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}$; suppose $\lambda$ is an eigenvalue of $A$ of geometric multiplicity $k$. Let

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & C \\
C^{*} & D
\end{array}\right)=B^{*} \in M_{n+(k-1)}
$$

Then $\lambda$ is an eigenvalue of $B$.
Proof.
Case 1. Suppose $k=2$; say $\lambda=\lambda_{i}(A)=\lambda_{i+1}(A)$. When we go to $\widehat{A}$ of size $(n+1) \times(n+1)$. Then

$$
\widehat{\lambda_{i}} \leq \lambda_{i} \leq \widehat{\lambda_{i+1}} \leq \lambda_{i+1}
$$

So $\lambda_{i}=\widehat{\lambda_{i+1}}=\lambda_{i+1}=\lambda$, and $\lambda$ is an eigenvalue of $\widehat{A}$.
Case 2. Suppose $k=3$; say $\lambda=\lambda_{i}=\lambda_{i+1}=\lambda_{i+2}$. For $\widehat{A}, \lambda$ is now an eigenvalue of geometric multiplicity at least 2 . So when we go to $\widehat{\hat{A}}$, we have that $\lambda$ is still an eigenvalue.

The rest follows by induction.Corollary 162

Theorem 163. Let

$$
\mu_{1} \leq \lambda_{1} \leq \mu_{2} \leq \lambda_{2} \leq \cdots \leq \mu_{n} \leq \lambda_{n} \leq \mu_{n+1}
$$

Then there is $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}(\mathbb{R}), a \in \mathbb{R}$, and $y_{k} \geq 0$ for $1 \leq k \leq n$ such that if

$$
\widehat{A}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & y \\
y^{*} & a
\end{array}\right)
$$

then $\lambda_{i}(\widehat{A})=\mu_{i}$ and $\lambda_{i}(A)=\lambda_{i}$.
Proof.

Case 1. Suppose $\lambda_{1}<\lambda_{2}<\cdots<\lambda_{n}$. We then let $A=\operatorname{diag}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$. It remains to construct $a$ and the $y_{k}$. Well, we need

$$
\lambda_{1}+\cdots+\lambda_{n}+a=\operatorname{tr}(\widehat{A})=\mu_{1}+\cdots+\mu_{n+1}
$$

We then set $a=\mu_{1}+\cdots+\mu_{n+1}-\lambda_{1}-\cdots-\lambda_{n}$. It remains to find the $y_{k}$. We think of $\widehat{A}$ as a function of the $y_{k}$ and compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
p_{\widehat{A}}(t) & =\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
t I-A & -y \\
-y^{*} & t-a
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{det}(t I-A) \operatorname{det}\left((t-a)-(-y)^{*}(t I-A)^{-1}(-y)\right) \\
& =\left(t-\lambda_{1}\right) \ldots\left(t-\lambda_{n}\right) \operatorname{det}\left(t-a-\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\left(t-\lambda_{1}\right)^{-1} & & \\
& \ddots & \left.\left.\left(t-\lambda_{n}\right)^{-1}\right)\left(\begin{array}{c}
y_{1} \\
\vdots \\
y_{n}
\end{array}\right)\right) \\
& =\left(t-\lambda_{1}\right) \ldots\left(t-\lambda_{n}\right)\left(t-a-\sum_{k=1}^{n} y_{k}^{2}\left(t-\lambda_{k}\right)^{-1}\right) \\
& =\left(t-\lambda_{1}\right) \ldots\left(t-\lambda_{n}\right)(t-a)-\sum_{k=1}^{n} y_{k}^{2} \prod_{j \neq k}\left(t-\lambda_{j}\right)
\end{array}\right.\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

(with some conditions on invertibility, but since we're working with polynomials, equality at all but finitely many points is equivalent to equality.) Set $q(t)=\left(t-\mu_{1}\right) \ldots\left(t-\mu_{n+1}\right)$. We want $p_{\widehat{A}}(t)=q(t)$. Evaluate at $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
p_{\widehat{A}}\left(\lambda_{k}\right) & =-y_{k}^{2} \prod_{j \neq k}\left(\lambda_{k}-\lambda_{j}\right) \\
q\left(\lambda_{k}\right) & =\left(\lambda_{k}-\mu_{1}\right) \ldots\left(\lambda_{k}-\mu_{k}\right)\left(\lambda_{k}-\mu_{k+1}\right) \ldots\left(\lambda_{k}-\mu_{n+1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

if

$$
y_{k}^{2}=-\frac{q\left(\lambda_{k}\right)}{\prod_{j \neq k}\left(\lambda_{k}-\lambda_{j}\right)}
$$

then $p_{\widehat{A}}\left(\lambda_{k}\right)=q\left(\lambda_{k}\right)$ for $1 \leq k \leq n$.

## Claim 164.

$$
\frac{q\left(\lambda_{k}\right)}{\prod_{j \neq k}\left(\lambda_{k}-\lambda_{j}\right)} \leq 0
$$

Hence we can pick

$$
y_{k}=\sqrt{-\frac{q\left(\lambda_{k}\right)}{\prod_{j \neq k}\left(\lambda_{k}-\lambda_{j}\right)}}
$$

Proof. Computing signs on the product based on $\lambda_{1}<\cdots<\lambda_{n}$, we find

$$
\operatorname{sgn}\left(\prod_{j \neq k}\left(\lambda_{k}-\lambda_{i}\right)\right)=(-1)^{n-k}
$$

Making a similar computation, we find

$$
\operatorname{sgn}\left(q\left(\lambda_{k}\right)\right)=\operatorname{sgn}\left(\prod_{i=1}^{n+1}\left(\lambda_{k}-\mu_{i}\right)\right)=(-1)^{n+1-k}
$$

Taking the quotient, we find that the claim holds.
Claim 164

Picking $y_{k}$ as in the claim, we get $p_{\widehat{A}}\left(\lambda_{k}\right)=q\left(\lambda_{k}\right)$ for all $1 \leq k \leq n$. Recall that $p_{A}$ and $q$ are both monic of degree $n+1$. Also

$$
\begin{aligned}
p_{\widehat{A}}(t) & =t^{n+1}-\left(\lambda_{1}+\cdots+\lambda_{n}+a\right) t^{n}+\ldots \\
q(t) & =t^{n+1}-\left(\mu_{1}+\cdots+\mu_{n+1}\right) t^{n}+\ldots
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence $p_{\widehat{A}}(t)-q(t)$ has degree $n-1$ and is 0 at $n$ distinct points. (The distinctness is where we use that the $\lambda_{i}$ are distinct.) So $p_{\widehat{A}}(t)=q(t)$.

Case 2. We now consider case where the $\lambda_{i}$ are not necessarily distinct.
Pick $\lambda_{1}(m)<\cdots<\lambda_{n}(m)$ a sequence and $\mu_{1}(m) \leq \lambda_{1}(m) \leq \mu_{2}(m)<\cdots \leq \mu_{n+1}(m)$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lim _{m \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_{i}(m) & =\lambda_{i} \\
\lim _{m \rightarrow \infty} \mu_{i}(m) & =\mu_{i}
\end{aligned}
$$

By the previous case, for each $m$ there is

$$
\widehat{A}(m)=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\lambda_{1}(m) & & & \\
& \ddots & & y(m) \\
& y(m)^{*} & & \lambda_{n}(m)
\end{array}\right)
$$

with

$$
a_{m}=\mu_{1}(m)+\cdots+\mu_{n+1}(m)-\lambda_{1}(m)-\cdots-\lambda_{n}(m)
$$

such that $p_{\widehat{A}(m)}(t)=\left(t-\mu_{1}(m)\right) \ldots\left(t-\mu_{n+1}(m)\right)$. Now, since

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left(\widehat{A}(m)^{*} \widehat{A}(m)\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{n+1} \mu_{i}(m)^{2} \leq \sum_{i=1}^{n+1} \mu_{i}^{2}+\varepsilon
$$

So the $\widehat{A}(m)$ is bounded; hence we can pick a convergent subsequence with

$$
\lim _{j \rightarrow \infty} \widehat{A}\left(m_{j}\right)=\widehat{A}
$$

Then

$$
\widehat{A}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\lambda_{1} & & & \\
& \ddots & & y \\
& & \lambda_{n} & \\
& y^{*} & & a
\end{array}\right)
$$

Finally, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
p_{\widehat{A}}(t) & =\lim _{j \rightarrow \infty} \operatorname{det}\left(t I-A\left(m_{j}\right)\right) \\
& =\lim _{j \rightarrow \infty}\left(t-\mu_{1}\left(m_{j}\right)\right) \ldots\left(t-\mu_{n+1}\right) \\
& =\left(t-\mu_{1}\right) \ldots\left(t-\mu_{n+1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 165. Let $A=A^{*}=\left[a_{i j}\right] \in M_{n}$ with $1 \leq m \leq n$. Then

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{m} \lambda_{i}(A) \leq \sum_{i=1}^{m} a_{i i}
$$

Proof. Write

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
B & C \\
C^{*} & D
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $B \in M_{m}$. Let $A_{1} \in M_{n+1}$ be

$$
A_{1}=\left(\begin{array}{cc} 
& a_{1, m+1} \\
B & \vdots \\
\ldots & a_{m+1, m+1}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Let $A_{2} \in M_{n+2}$ be the next 2 rows and columns, and so on; then $A_{n-m}=A$. We know

$$
\lambda_{1}\left(A_{1}\right) \leq \lambda_{1}(B) \leq \lambda_{2}\left(A_{1}\right) \leq \cdots \leq \lambda_{m}\left(A_{1}\right) \leq \lambda_{m}(B) \leq \lambda_{m+1}\left(A_{1}\right)
$$

So

$$
\lambda_{1}\left(A_{1}\right)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}\left(A_{1}\right) \leq \lambda_{1}(B)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}(B)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} a_{i i}
$$

Similarly

$$
A_{2}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A_{1} & \vdots \\
\ldots & a_{m+2, m+2}
\end{array}\right)
$$

yields that

$$
\lambda_{1}\left(A_{2}\right)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}\left(A_{2}\right) \leq \lambda_{1}\left(A_{1}\right)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}\left(A_{1}\right) \leq \sum_{i=1}^{m} a_{i i}
$$

By induction this holds for all $A_{k}$, and in particular for $A_{n-m}=A$.
Theorem 165
Corollary 166. Suppose $A=A^{*}=\left[a_{i j}\right] \in M_{n}$; suppose $1 \leq m \leq n$. Then

$$
\lambda_{1}(A)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}(A) \leq \min _{1 \leq i_{1}<\cdots<i_{m} \leq n} \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i_{j}, i_{j}}
$$

Proof. Do a permutation $P_{\sigma}$; then $P_{\sigma}^{*} A P_{\sigma}=\left[b_{i, j}\right]$ where $b_{i, j}=a_{\sigma(i), \sigma(j)}$. Then

$$
\lambda_{1}(A)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}(A)=\lambda_{1}\left(P_{\sigma}^{*} A P_{\sigma}\right)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}\left(P_{\sigma}^{*} A P_{\sigma}\right) \leq \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i, i}=\sum_{i=1}^{m} a_{\sigma(i), \sigma(i)}
$$

Corollary 166
Corollary 167. Suppose $A=A^{*}=\left[a_{i, j}\right] \in M_{n}$; suppose $1 \leq m \leq n$. Then

$$
\lambda_{1}(A)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}(A)=\min _{\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}\right\}}{ }_{\text {orthonormal }} \sum_{i=1}^{m}\left\langle A u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle
$$

Proof. Given any $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{m}\right\}$ orthornormal, pick $\left\{u_{m+1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ such that $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ is an orthonormal basis for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$. Let $U=\left[u_{1}|\cdots| u_{n}\right]$ be unitary. Then

$$
\left(U^{*} A U\right)_{i, i}=\left\langle\left(U^{*} A U\right) e_{i}, e_{i}\right\rangle=\left(e_{i}^{*} U^{*}\right) A U e_{i}=u_{i}^{*} A u_{i}=\left\langle A u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle
$$

So

$$
\lambda_{1}(A)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}(A)=\lambda_{1}\left(U^{*} A U\right)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}\left(U^{*} A U\right) \leq \sum_{i=1}^{m}\left(U^{*} A U\right)_{i, i}=\sum_{i=1}^{m}\left\langle A u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle
$$

Thus

$$
\lambda_{1}(A)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}(A) \leq \inf _{\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\} \text { orthonormal }} \sum_{i=1}^{m}\left\langle A u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle
$$

Pick $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ an orthonormal basis such that $A u_{i}=\lambda_{i}(A) u_{i}$. For this orthonormal basis, we have

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{m}\left\langle A u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle=\sum_{i=1}^{m}\left\langle\lambda_{i}(A) u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle=\sum_{i=1}^{m} \lambda_{i}(A)
$$

Corollary 168. Suppose $A=A^{*}=\left[a_{i, j}\right] \in M_{n}$; suppose $1 \leq k \leq n$. Then

$$
\lambda_{n}(A)+\lambda_{n-1}(A)+\cdots+\lambda_{n-k+1}(A)=\max _{\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\} \text { orthonormal }} \sum_{i=1}^{k}\left\langle A u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle
$$

Proof. Well,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \lambda_{n}(A)+\cdots+\lambda_{n-k+1}(A)=-\left(\lambda_{1}(-A)+\cdots+\lambda_{k}(-A)\right) \\
&=-\left(\begin{array}{c}
\min ^{2} \\
\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{k}\right\} \text { orthonormal } \\
\left.\sum_{i=1}^{k}\left\langle-A u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle\right) \\
\end{array}\right. \\
&=-\left(-\max _{\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{k}\right\} \text { orthonormal }} \sum_{i=1}^{k}\left\langle A u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

### 6.2 Majorization

Definition 169. Suppose $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$. Re-order from smallest to largest:

$$
x_{1}^{\uparrow} \leq \cdots \leq x_{n}^{\uparrow}
$$

Re-order from largest to smallest:

$$
x_{1}^{\downarrow} \geq \cdots \geq x_{n}^{\downarrow}
$$

Example 170. Suppose $x=(1,2,1)$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
x_{1}^{\uparrow} & =1 \\
x_{2}^{\uparrow} & =1 \\
x_{3}^{\uparrow} & =2 \\
x_{1}^{\downarrow} & =2 \\
x_{2}^{\downarrow} & =1 \\
x_{3}^{\downarrow} & =1
\end{aligned}
$$

Example 171. Suppose $A=A^{*}$ and $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$ are the roots of $p_{A}(t)$. Then $\lambda_{i}(A)=\lambda_{i}^{\uparrow}$.
Proposition 172. Suppose $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ and $y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)$ in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ with

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} y_{i}
$$

Then the following are equivalent:

1. For all $1 \leq k \leq n$, we have

$$
\max _{1 \leq i_{1}<\cdots<i_{k} \leq n} \sum_{\ell=1}^{k} x_{i_{\ell}} \geq \max _{1 \leq i_{1}<\cdots<i_{k} \leq n} \sum_{\ell=1}^{k} y_{i_{\ell}}
$$

2. For all $1 \leq k \leq n$, we have

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{k} x_{i}^{\downarrow} \geq \sum_{i=1}^{k} y_{i}^{\downarrow}
$$

3. For all $1 \leq k \leq n$, we have

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{k} x_{i}^{\uparrow} \leq \sum_{i=1}^{k} y_{i}^{\uparrow}
$$

4. For all $1 \leq k \leq n$, we have

$$
\min _{1 \leq i_{1}<\cdots<i_{k} \leq n} \sum_{\ell=1}^{k} x_{i_{\ell}} \leq \min _{1 \leq i_{1}<\cdots<i_{k} \leq n} \sum_{\ell=1}^{k} y_{i_{\ell}}
$$

Proof. Well

$$
\max _{1 \leq i_{1}<\cdots<i_{k} \leq n} \sum_{\ell=1}^{k} x_{i_{\ell}}=\sum_{\ell=1}^{k} x_{\ell}^{\downarrow}
$$

So $(1) \Longleftrightarrow(2)$. Similarly

$$
\min _{1 \leq i_{1}<\cdots<i_{k} \leq n} \sum_{\ell=1}^{k} x_{i_{\ell}}=\sum_{\ell=1}^{k} x_{\ell}^{\uparrow}
$$

So (3) $\Longleftrightarrow(4)$. Let

$$
S=\sum_{\ell=1}^{n} x_{\ell}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} y_{\ell}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i=1}^{k} x_{i}^{\downarrow} & =S-\sum_{\ell=1}^{n-k+1} x_{\ell}^{\uparrow} \\
& \geq \sum_{i=1}^{k} y_{i}^{\downarrow} \\
& =S-\sum_{\ell=1}^{n-k+1} y_{i}^{\uparrow}
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{k} x_{i}^{\downarrow} \geq \sum_{i=1}^{k} y_{i}^{\downarrow} \Longleftrightarrow \sum_{\ell=1}^{n-k+1} x_{\ell}^{\uparrow} \leq \sum_{\ell=1}^{n-k+1} y_{\ell}^{\uparrow}
$$

Definition 173. Given $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right), y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$, we say that $x$ majorizes $y$ if

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} y_{i}
$$

and any of the 4 equivalent properties occurs.
Theorem 174 (Schur). Suppose $A=A^{*}=\left[a_{i, j}\right] \in M_{n}$. Let $\lambda(A)=\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$ be the roots of $p_{A}(t)$; let $d(A)=\left(a_{11}, \ldots, a_{n n}\right)$. Then $\lambda(A)$ majorizes $d(A)$.

Proof. Note that

$$
\lambda_{1}+\cdots+\lambda_{n}=\operatorname{tr}(A)=a_{11}+\cdots+a_{n n}
$$

By the last theorem, for all $1 \leq m \leq k$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda_{1}^{\uparrow}+\cdots+\lambda_{m}^{\uparrow} & =\lambda_{1}(A)+\cdots+\lambda_{m}(A) \\
& \leq \min _{1 \leq i_{1}<\cdots<i_{m} \leq n} \sum_{\ell=1}^{m} a_{i_{\ell}, i_{\ell}} \\
& =\sum_{\ell=1}^{m} a_{\ell, \ell}^{\uparrow}
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence

$$
\sum_{\ell=1}^{k} \lambda_{\ell}^{\downarrow} \geq \sum_{\ell=1}^{k} a_{\ell, \ell}^{\downarrow}
$$

## 7 Positive semidefinite

Definition 175. We say $A \in M_{n}$ is positive semidefinite (written $A \geq 0$ ) if for all $x \in \mathbb{C}^{n}$ we have $\langle A x, x\rangle \geq 0$. We say $A$ is positive definite (written $A>0$ ) if for all non-zero $x \in \mathbb{C}^{n}$ we have $\langle A x, x\rangle>0$.

## Proposition 176.

1. $A \geq 0$ if and only if $A=A^{*}$ and each $\lambda_{i}(A) \geq 0$.
2. $A>0$ if and only if $A=A^{*}$ and each $\lambda_{i}(A)>0$; this occurs if and only if there is $\delta>0$ such that $\langle A x, x\rangle \geq \delta$ whenever $\|x\|=1$.

Proof.

1. ( $\Longrightarrow$ ) Suppose $A \geq 0$. Then $\langle A x, x\rangle \in \mathbb{R}$ for all $x$; so $A=A^{*}$. Fix an eigenvalue $\lambda_{i}(A)$ with eigenvector $u_{i}$ of unit length. Then $A u_{i}=\lambda_{i}(A) u_{i}$; so $\lambda_{i}(A)=\left\langle A u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle \geq 0$.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ We know there is $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ an orthonormal basis for $\mathbb{C}^{n}$ of eigenvectors with $A u_{i}=\lambda_{i}(A) u_{i}$. Suppose

$$
x=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_{i} u_{i}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle A x, x\rangle & =\left\langle\sum_{i} \alpha_{i} \lambda_{i}(A) u_{i}, \sum_{j} \alpha_{j} u_{j}\right\rangle \\
& =\sum_{i, j} \lambda_{i}(A) \alpha_{i} \overline{\alpha_{J}} \\
& =\sum_{i} \lambda_{i}(A)\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2} \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Suppose $A>0$. Then $A \geq 0$, so $A=A^{*}$ and each $\lambda_{i}(A) \geq 0$. But if some $\lambda_{i}(A)=0$, then

$$
\left\langle A u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle=\lambda_{i}(A)\left\langle u_{i}, u_{i}\right\rangle=0
$$

a contradiction. So each $\lambda_{i}(A)>0$.
Suppose $A=A^{*}$ and each $\lambda_{i}(A)>0$. Then, as above, we take

$$
x=\sum_{i} \alpha_{i} u_{i}
$$

with $\|x\|=1$; then

$$
\sum_{i}\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2}=1
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle A x, x\rangle & =\sum_{i} \lambda_{i}(A)\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2} \\
& \geq \lambda_{1}(A) \sum_{i}\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2} \\
& =\lambda_{1}(A) \\
& >0
\end{aligned}
$$

In particular, the minimum value of $\langle A x, x\rangle$ is $\delta=\lambda_{1}(A)$.
Proposition 176
Lemma 177. Suppose $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}^{-1}$. Then $A^{-1}=\left(A^{-1}\right)^{*}$ and the roots of $p_{A^{-1}}(t)$ are $\lambda_{1}(A)^{-1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}(A)^{-1}$.
Proof. Note that

$$
I^{*}=\left(A^{-1} A\right)^{*}=A^{*}\left(A^{-1}\right)^{*}=A\left(A^{-1}\right)^{*}
$$

So $\left(A^{-1}\right)^{*}=A^{-1}$.
If $A u_{i}=\lambda_{i}(A) u_{i}$, then $A^{-1} u_{i}=\lambda_{i}(A)^{-1} u_{i}$; thus if $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ is an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors of $A$, then it is also an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors of $A^{-1}$ with eigenvalues $\lambda_{i}(A)^{-1}$. Lemma 177

## Proposition 178.

1. If $A \geq 0$, then $\bar{A}=A^{t} \geq 0$.
2. If $A>0$, then $\bar{A}=A^{t}>0$ and $A^{-1}>0$.
3. If $A \geq 0$ and $S \subseteq\{1, \ldots, n\}$, then $A[S, S] \geq 0$.
4. If $A>0$ and $S \subseteq\{1, \ldots, n\}$, then $A[S, S]>0$.

Proof.

1. Note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle\bar{A} x, x\rangle & =\sum_{i, j=1}^{n} \overline{a_{i j}} x_{j} \overline{x_{i}} \\
& =\overline{\sum_{i, j=1}^{n} a_{i j} \overline{x_{j}} x_{i}} \\
& =\overline{\langle A \bar{x}, \bar{x}\rangle} \\
& \in \mathbb{R}
\end{aligned}
$$

So $(\bar{A})^{*}=\bar{A}$. If $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ is an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors for $A$ with $A u_{i}=\lambda_{i}(A) u_{i}$ and
$x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
A x & =\left(\begin{array}{c}
\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j} \\
\vdots \\
\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{n j} x_{j}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\lambda\left(\begin{array}{c}
x_{1} \\
\vdots \\
x_{n}
\end{array}\right) \\
\Longrightarrow \bar{A} \bar{x} & =\left(\begin{array}{c}
\sum_{j=1}^{n} \overline{a_{1 j} x_{j}} \\
\vdots \\
\sum_{j=1}^{n} \overline{a_{n j} x_{j}}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\lambda\left(\begin{array}{c}
\overline{x_{1}} \\
\vdots \\
\overline{x_{n}}
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

So if $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ are eigenvectors with real eigenvalues $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$, then $\left\{\overline{u_{1}}, \ldots, \overline{u_{n}}\right\}$ is a set of eigenvectors for $\bar{A}$ with the same eigenvalues. Thus $\lambda_{i}(\bar{A})=\lambda_{i}(A) \geq 0$, and $\bar{A} \geq 0$.
2. Same: we get $\lambda_{i}(\bar{A})=\lambda_{i}(A)>0$ and $A^{-1}=\left(A^{-1}\right)^{*}$.
3. Without loss of generality, we have $S=\{1, \ldots, k\}$. So

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A[S, S] & B \\
B^{*} & C
\end{array}\right) \geq 0
$$

Let $x \in \mathbb{C}^{k}$; let

$$
\widehat{x}=\binom{x}{0}
$$

Then

$$
0 \leq\langle A \widehat{x}, \widehat{x}\rangle=\langle A[S, S] x, x\rangle
$$

So $A[S, S] \geq 0$.
4. As above, noting that $x \neq 0$ implies that $\widehat{x} \neq 0$; thus

$$
0<\langle A \widehat{x}, \widehat{x}\rangle=\langle A[S, S] x, x\rangle
$$

and $A[S, S]>0$.

Proposition 179. Suppose $A \geq 0(A>0)$. Then $A^{k} \geq 0\left(A^{k}>0\right)$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$.
Proof. Note that $\left(A^{k}\right)^{*}=A^{k}$, and that the eigenvaluse are $\lambda_{i}(A)^{k} \geq 0(>0)$.
Set $A_{i}=A[\{1, \ldots, i\},\{1, \ldots, i\}]$.
Theorem 180. Suppose $A=A^{*} \in M_{n}$. Then $A>0$ if and only if $\operatorname{det}\left(A_{i}\right)>0$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$.
Example 181. Consider

$$
A=A^{*}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 0 & 2 \\
0 & 0 & 0 \\
2 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{det}\left(A_{1}\right) & =1 \\
\operatorname{det}\left(A_{2}\right) & =0 \\
\operatorname{det}\left(A_{3}\right) & =0
\end{aligned}
$$

But

$$
\left\langle A\left(\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
0 \\
-1
\end{array}\right),\left(\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
0 \\
-1
\end{array}\right)\right\rangle=-2
$$

So $A \nsupseteq 0$.
Proof of Theorem 180.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Suppose $A>0$. Then all eigenvalues are positive; so $\operatorname{det}\left(A_{i}\right)>0$.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ Note that $\operatorname{det}\left(A_{1}\right)=a_{11}>0$. The

$$
A_{2}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
a_{11} & a_{12} \\
a_{21} & a_{22}
\end{array}\right)
$$

We now use the eigenvalue interlacing theorem:

$$
\lambda_{1}\left(A_{2}\right) \leq \lambda_{1}\left(A_{1}\right) a_{11} \leq \lambda_{2}\left(A_{2}\right)
$$

So $\lambda_{2}\left(A_{2}\right)>0$. $\mathrm{Bu} \operatorname{tdet}\left(A_{2}\right)=\lambda_{1}\left(A_{1}\right) \lambda_{2}\left(A_{2}\right)>0$. So $\lambda_{1}\left(A_{2}\right)>0$.
Assume $0<\lambda_{1}\left(A_{k}\right)<\cdots<\lambda_{k}\left(A_{k}\right)$. Then, by eigenvalue interlacing, we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
\lambda_{1}\left(A_{k+1}\right) \leq \lambda_{1}\left(A_{k}\right) \leq \lambda_{2}\left(A_{k+1}\right) \\
\vdots \\
\lambda_{k}\left(A_{k+1}\right) \leq \lambda_{k}\left(A_{k}\right) \leq \lambda_{k+1}\left(A_{k+1}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

So $\lambda_{2}\left(A_{k+1}\right), \ldots, \lambda_{k+1}\left(A_{k+1}\right)>0$. But $0<\operatorname{det}\left(A_{k+1}\right)=\lambda_{i}\left(A_{k+1}\right) \ldots \lambda_{k+1}\left(A_{k+1}\right)$. So $\lambda_{1}\left(A_{k+1}\right)>0$.Theorem 180
Aside 182. Suppose $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n}$ and $f: D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is $C^{2}$. Suppose $x_{0} \in D$ with

$$
f^{\prime}\left(x_{0}\right)=\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{1}}\left(x_{0}\right), \ldots, \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{n}}\left(x_{0}\right)\right)=0
$$

We set

$$
H_{f}\left(x_{0}\right)=\left(\frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial x_{i} \partial x_{j}}\left(x_{0}\right)\right)
$$

If $u \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is a unit vector and $g_{u}(t)=f\left(x_{0}+t u\right)$, then $g_{u}^{\prime \prime}(0)=\left\langle H_{f}\left(x_{0}\right) u, u\right\rangle$.
Theorem 183. Suppose $f \in C^{2}(D)$ and $f^{\prime}\left(x_{0}\right)=0$. If $H_{f}\left(x_{0}\right)>0$, then $x_{0}$ is a local minimum. If $-H_{f}\left(x_{0}\right)>0$, then $x_{0}$ is a local maximum.

Sketch. If $H_{f}\left(x_{0}\right)>0$, then $g_{u}^{\prime \prime}(0)>0$ for all $u$; roughly speaking, we then have that $x_{0}$ is a local minimum in all directions, we have that $x_{0}$ is a local minimum.Theorem 183

Since

$$
\frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial x_{i} \partial x_{j}}=\frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial x_{j} \partial x_{i}}
$$

we have that $H_{f}\left(x_{0}\right)=H_{f}\left(x_{0}\right)^{*}$.
Corollary 184. If $\operatorname{det}\left(H_{f}\left(x_{0}\right)_{i}\right)>0$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$, then $x_{0}$ is a local minimum. If $(-1)^{i} \operatorname{det}\left(H_{f}\left(x_{0}\right)_{i}\right)>0$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$, then $x_{0}$ is a local maximum.

Proposition 185. Suppose $A \in M_{n}, C \in M_{n, m}$. If $A \geq 0$ then $C^{*} A C \geq 0$. In particular, we have $C^{*} C \geq 0$.
Proof. Note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle C^{*} A C x, x\right\rangle & =\left(x^{*} C^{*}\right) A(C x) \\
& =(C x)^{*} A(C x) \\
& =\langle A(C x),(C x)\rangle \\
& \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Proposition 186. Suppose $A \geq 0$ and $k \in \mathbb{N}$. Then there is $B \geq 0$ such that $A=B^{k}$.
Proof. Write $A=U^{*} D U$ where $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$ where $\lambda_{i}=\lambda_{i}(A)$. Let

$$
\widetilde{D}=\operatorname{diag}\left(\lambda_{1}^{\frac{1}{k}}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}^{\frac{1}{k}}\right)
$$

Let $B=U^{*} \widetilde{D} U$. Then $B^{k}=U^{*} \widetilde{D}^{k} U=U^{*} D U=A$.Proposition 186

We write $B=A^{\frac{1}{k}}$.
Proposition 187. Suppose $A \geq 0$. Then $A x=0$ if and only if $\langle A x, x\rangle=0$.
Proof.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Clear.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ Write $A=B^{2}$ where $B \geq 0$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & =\langle A x, x\rangle \\
& =x^{*} B^{2} x \\
& =(B x)^{*}(B x) \\
& =\|B x\|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

so $B x=0$ and $A x=B(B x)=0$.
Proposition 187

### 7.1 Factorization and decomposition

We already saw that if $A \geq 0$, there is $B \geq 0$ such that $A=B^{2}$; then $B^{*}=B$, and $A=B^{2} B$. This is one factorization.

Proposition 188. Let $A \geq 0$; then $A=R^{*} R$ with $R$ upper triangular.
Proof. Write $A=B^{*} B$ as above. Apply the QR theorem to write $B=Q R$ where $Q$ is unitary and $R$ is upper triangular. Then

$$
A=B^{*} B=(Q R)^{*}(Q R)=R^{*} Q^{*} Q R=R^{*} R
$$

### 7.1.1 Cholesky factorization

Lemma 189 (Cholesky's lemma). Let

$$
P=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & B \\
B^{*} & C
\end{array}\right)=P^{*}
$$

with $A>0$. Then the following are equivalent:

1. $P \geq 0$
2. 

$$
P-\binom{A^{\frac{1}{2}}}{B^{*} A^{\frac{1}{2}}}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
A^{\frac{1}{2}} & \left.A^{-\frac{1}{2}} B\right) \geq 0
\end{array}\right.
$$

3. $C-B^{*} A^{-1} B \geq 0$

Proof.
$\mathbf{( 2 )} \Longleftrightarrow \mathbf{( 3 )}$ Note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
P-\binom{A^{\frac{1}{2}}}{B^{*} A^{\frac{1}{2}}}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
A^{\frac{1}{2}} & A^{-\frac{1}{2}} B
\end{array}\right) & =P-\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & B \\
B^{*} & B^{*} A^{-1} B
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 0 \\
0 & C-B^{*} A^{-1} B
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
P-\binom{A^{\frac{1}{2}}}{B^{*} A^{\frac{1}{2}}}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
A^{\frac{1}{2}} & \left.A^{-\frac{1}{2}} B\right) \geq 0
\end{array}\right.
$$

if and only if $C-B^{*} A^{-1} B \geq 0$.
(1) $\Longrightarrow$ (3) Let $X=-A^{-1} B$. Then since $P \geq 0$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & \leq\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & 0 \\
X^{*} & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & B \\
B^{*} & C
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & X \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & 0 \\
-B^{*} A^{-1} & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & A X+B \\
B^{*} & B^{*} X+C
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & 0 \\
-B^{*} A^{-1} & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & 0 \\
B^{*} & C-B^{*} A^{-1} B
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
A & 0 \\
0 & C-B^{*} A^{-1} B
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

So $C-B^{*} A^{-1} B \geq 0$.
$\mathbf{( 3 )} \Longrightarrow$ (1) Suppose $C-B^{*} A^{-1} B \geq 0$. Then

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & 0 \\
0 & C-B^{*} A^{-1} B
\end{array}\right) \geq 0
$$

So

$$
0 \leq\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & 0 \\
-X^{*} & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & 0 \\
0 & C-B^{*} A^{-1} B
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & -X \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)=P
$$

Lemma 190. Suppose $P=P^{*}=\left(p_{i j}\right) \in M_{n}$ satisfies $P \geq 0$. If $p_{i i}=0$ then $p_{i j}=p_{j i}=0$ for all $j$.

Proof. Let $S=\{i, j\}$. Then since $P \geq 0$ we have $P[S, S] \geq 0$. But

$$
P[S, S]=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
p_{i i} & p_{i j} \\
p_{j i} & p_{j j}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & p_{i j} \\
p_{j i} & p_{j j}
\end{array}\right)
$$

so $0 \leq \operatorname{det}(P[S, S])=-\left|p_{i j}\right|^{2} ;$ so $p_{i j}=0$.Lemma 190

This yields Cholesky's algorithm, a fast way to tell if a Hermitian matrix $P$ is positive semidefinite and, if it is, find upper triangular $T$ such that $P=T^{*} T$.
Example 191. Let

$$
P=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
2 & 8 & 7 \\
3 & 7 & 11
\end{array}\right)
$$

Decompose $P$ as in Cholesky's lemma

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A=(1) \\
& B=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
2 & 3
\end{array}\right) \\
& C=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
8 & 7 \\
7 & 11
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

If $P \geq 0$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
P-\left(\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
2 \\
3
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 2 & 3
\end{array}\right) & =P-\left(\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
2 & 4 & 6 \\
3 & 6 & 9
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{lll}
0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 4 & 1 \\
0 & 1 & 2
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Then $P \geq 0$ if and only if

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ll}
4 & 1 \\
1 & 2
\end{array}\right) \geq 0
$$

Again, using Cholesky, this holds if and only if

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & \leq\left(\begin{array}{ll}
4 & 1 \\
1 & 2
\end{array}\right)-\binom{4}{1} 4^{-1}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
4 & 1
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
4 & 1 \\
1 & 2
\end{array}\right)-\left(\begin{array}{ll}
4 & 1 \\
1 & \frac{1}{4}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 0 \\
0 & \frac{7}{4}
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

But $\frac{7}{4}=\left(\frac{\sqrt{7}}{2}\right)^{2}$; so $P \geq 0$. In general, we get that $P \geq 0$ unless at some step the "new" $(1,1)$-entry either is negative or is 0 and some entries in that row and column are non-zero.

Finally, to get $T$, save the scaled row vectors we subtract by (where we distribute the square root of middle scalar to both sides), and get

$$
T=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
0 & 2 & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & 0 & \frac{\sqrt{7}}{2}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and $T^{*} T=P$. To see that this works in general, recall that if

$$
W=\left(\begin{array}{c}
r_{1} \\
\vdots \\
r_{n}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $W^{*} W=r_{1}^{*} r_{1}+\cdots+r_{n}^{*} r_{n}$. So

$$
T^{*} T=\left(\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
2 \\
3
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 2 & 3
\end{array}\right)+\left(\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
2 \\
\frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{lll}
0 & 2 & \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}\right)+\left(\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
0 \\
\frac{\sqrt{7}}{2}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{lll}
0 & 0 & \frac{\sqrt{7}}{2}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Remark 192. We saw that if $A \in M_{n}$ has $A \geq 0$ then $A=R^{*} R$ for some $R$. Let $C=R^{*}$; then $A=C C^{*}$. Let $C=\left[C_{1}|\cdots| C_{n}\right]$; then $A=C C^{*}=C_{1} C_{1}^{*}+\cdots+C_{n} C_{n}^{*}$, and we can write $A$ as a sum of positive, rank 1 matrices. The moral is that a factorization $A=R^{*} R$ corresponds to a decomposition of $A$ into a sum of poistive, rank 1 matrices.

### 7.2 Subspaces, orthogonal complements, and projections

Definition 193. Suppose $V \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n}$ is a subspace. We set $V^{\perp}=\left\{w \in \mathbb{C}^{n}:\langle w, v\rangle=0\right.$ for all $\left.v \in V\right\}$.
Proposition 194. $V^{\perp}$ is a subspace and $V \cap V^{\perp}=\{0\}$.
Proof. If $w_{1}, w_{2} \in V^{\perp}$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, then $\left\langle\lambda w_{1}+w_{2}, v\right\rangle=\lambda\left\langle w_{1}, v\right\rangle+\left\langle w_{2}, v\right\rangle=0$ for all $v \in V$; so $\lambda w_{1}+$ $w_{2} \in V^{\perp}$, and $V^{\perp}$ is a subspace. Furthermore, if $w \in V \cap V^{\perp}$, then $\|w\|^{2}=\langle w, w\rangle=0$, and $w=0$.Proposition 194

Theorem 195. Let $V \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n}$ be a subspace with $\operatorname{dim}(V)=d$. Let $\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}\right\}$ be an orthonormal basis for V. Set

$$
P=\sum_{i=1}^{d} v_{i} v_{i}^{*}
$$

Then

1. $P=P^{2}=P^{*}$.
2. $\mathcal{R}(P)=V$.
3. $P v=v$ for all $v \in V$.
4. $P w=0$ for all $w \in V^{\perp}$.
5. $(I-P)^{2}=(I-P)^{*}=(I-P)$.
6. $\mathcal{R}(I-P)=V^{\perp}$.
7. $V+V^{\perp}=\mathbb{C}^{n}$ and if $w=v_{1}+v_{2}=v_{1}^{\prime}+v_{2}^{\prime}$ where $v_{1}, v_{1}^{\prime} \in V$ and $v_{2}, v_{2}^{\prime} \in V^{\perp}$, then $v_{1}=v_{1}^{\prime}$ and $v_{2}=v_{2}^{\prime}$.
8. If $\left\{w_{1}, \ldots, w_{d}\right\}$ is another orthonormal basis for $V$, then

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{d} w_{i} w_{i}^{*} P
$$

Proof.

1. Note that

$$
P^{*}=\sum_{i=1}^{d}\left(v_{i} v_{i}^{*}\right)^{*}=\sum_{i=1}^{d} v_{i}^{* *} v_{i}^{*}=P
$$

and

$$
P^{2}=\sum_{i, j=1}^{d} v_{i} v_{i}^{*} v_{j} v_{j}^{*}=\sum_{i, j=1}^{d}\left\langle v_{j}, v_{i}\right\rangle v_{i} v_{j}^{*}=\sum_{i=1}^{d} v_{i} v_{i}^{*}=P
$$

2. Note that

$$
P w=\sum_{i=1}^{d} v_{i} v_{i}^{*} w=\sum_{i=1}^{d}\left\langle w, v_{i}\right\rangle v_{i} \in \operatorname{span}\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}\right\}
$$

So $\mathcal{R}(P) \subseteq V$. But

$$
P v_{j}=\sum_{i=1}^{d} v_{i} v_{i}^{*} v_{j}=v_{j}
$$

So $v_{j} \in \mathcal{R}(P)$, and $V=\operatorname{span}\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}\right\} \subseteq \mathcal{R}(P)$. So $\mathcal{R}(P)=V$.
3.
4. If $w \in V^{\perp}$ then

$$
P w=\sum_{i=1}^{d} v_{i} v_{i}^{*} w=0
$$

5. $(I-P)^{*}=I^{*}-P^{*}=I-P$, and $(I-P)^{2}=I-P-P+P^{2}=I-P$.
6. If $w \in V^{\perp}$, then $(I-P) w=w-P w=w$; so if $w \in V^{\perp}$ then $w \in \mathcal{R}(I-P)$. Conversely, if $w \in \mathcal{R}(I-P)$, say $w=(I-P) z$, then

$$
w=z-P z=z-\sum_{i=1}^{d}\left\langle z, v_{i}\right\rangle v_{i}
$$

so

$$
\left\langle w, v_{j}\right\rangle=\left\langle z, v_{j}\right\rangle-\sum_{i=1}^{d}\left\langle z, v_{i}\right\rangle\left\langle v_{i}, v_{j}\right\rangle=\left\langle z, v_{j}\right\rangle-\left\langle z, v_{j}\right\rangle=0
$$

So $w \in V^{\perp}$. So $\mathcal{R}(I-P) \subseteq V^{\perp}$. So $\mathcal{R}(I-P)=V^{\perp}$.
7. Note that

$$
w=(P+(I-P)) w=P w+(I-P) w \in V+V^{\perp}
$$

Suppose now that $w=v_{1}+v_{2}=v_{1}^{\prime}+v_{2}^{\prime}$ for $v_{1}, v_{1}^{\prime} \in V$ and $v_{2}, v_{2}^{\prime} \in V^{\perp}$. Then $V \ni v_{1}-v^{\prime}=v_{2}^{\prime}-v_{2} \in V^{\perp}$. So $v_{1}-v_{1}^{\prime}=v_{2}^{\prime}-v_{2}=0$, as $V \cap V^{\perp}=\{0\}$.
8. Set

$$
Q=\sum_{i=1}^{d} w_{i} w_{i}^{*}
$$

Then (1) through (6) hold for $Q$ as well. Thus if $w=v_{1}+v_{2}$ for $v_{1} \in V$ and $v_{2} \in V^{\perp}$, we have $P w=v_{1}$ and $Q w=v_{1}$; so $P=Q$.

Theorem 195
Definition 196. The matrix $P$ is called the orthogonal projection onto $V$.

### 7.3 Gram matrices

Definition 197. Given $w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n} \in \mathbb{C}^{k}$, we define the Gram matrix or Grammian of the vectors is the $n \times n$ matrix $G=\left(g_{i, j}\right)$ with $g_{i, j}=\left\langle w_{j}, w_{i}\right\rangle=w_{i}^{*} w_{j}$.

Theorem 198. Suppose $w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n} \in \mathbb{C}^{k}$; let $W=\left[w_{1}|\cdots| w_{n}\right] \in M_{k, n}$. Then

1. $G=W^{*} W$, and hence $G \geq 0$.
2. $G>0$ if and only if $\left\{w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n}\right\}$ are linearly independent.
3. $\operatorname{rank}(G)=\operatorname{rank}(W)=\operatorname{dim}\left(\operatorname{span}\left\{w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n}\right\}\right)$.

Proof.

1. Clear.
2. Let

$$
x=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\lambda_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\lambda_{n}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle G x, x\rangle & =\left\langle W^{*} W x, x\right\rangle \\
& =x^{*} W^{*} W x \\
& =(W x)^{*}(W x) \\
& =\|W x\|^{2} \\
& =\left\|\sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} w_{i}\right\|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

So $\langle G x, x\rangle>0$ if and only if

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} w_{i} \neq 0
$$

3. Suppose $x \in \mathcal{N}(G)$. Then $G x=0$, so $\langle G x, x\rangle=0$, and

$$
\left\|\sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} w_{i}\right\|=0
$$

So

$$
W x=\sum_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_{i} w_{i}=0
$$

So $\mathcal{N}(G) \subseteq \mathcal{N}(W)$.
Conversely, if $x \in \mathcal{N}(W)$, then $G x=W^{*} W x=W^{*} 0=0$.
So $\mathcal{N}(G)=\mathcal{N}(W)$. Then

$$
\operatorname{rank}(G)=n-\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{N}(G))=n-\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{N}(W))=\operatorname{rank}(W)=\operatorname{dim}\left(\operatorname{span}\left\{w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n}\right\}\right)
$$

### 7.4 Polar form and singular valued decomposition

Definition 199. Suppose $A \in M_{m, n}$. We set $|A|=\left(A^{*} A\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$; this is called the absolute value of $A$. The singular values of $A$ are $S_{i}(A)=\lambda_{i}^{\downarrow}(|A|)$ for $1 \leq i \leq n$.

Lemma 200. Suppose $A \in M_{m, n}$; suppose $x \in \mathbb{C}^{n}$. Then

1. $\||A| x\|_{2}=\|A x\|_{2}$.
2. $A x=0$ if and only if $|A| x=0$.

Proof.

1. Note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\||A| x\|^{2} & =(|A x|)^{*}(|A| x) \\
& =x^{*}|A|^{*}|A| x \\
& =x^{*} A^{*} A x \\
& =\|A x\|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Follows easily from (1).

Lemma 200
Theorem 201 (Polar decomposition I). Suppose $A \in M_{m, n}$. Then there is a unique isometry $W: \mathcal{R}(|A|) \rightarrow$ $\mathcal{R}(A)$ such that $A=W|A|$.

Proof. Note that $A x=W|A| x$ if and only if $W(|A| x)=A x$. We check that this is well-defined. By Lemma 114 , there is linear $W$ with $W|A| x=A x$ for all $x$ if and only if whenever we have

$$
\sum \lambda_{i}\left(|A| x_{i}\right)=0
$$

we also have

$$
\sum \lambda_{i}\left(A x_{i}\right)=0
$$

But

$$
\sum \lambda_{i}|A| x_{i}=|A|\left(\sum \lambda_{i} x_{i}\right)=0
$$

so by the lemma we have that

$$
\sum \lambda_{i}\left(A x_{i}\right)=A\left(\sum \lambda_{i} x_{i}\right)=0
$$

So $W$ exists. But then

$$
\|W(|A| x)\|=\|A x\|=\||A| x\|
$$

So $W$ is an isometry. To check uniqueness, suppose we had $V$ also satisfying the desired properties. Then

$$
V(|A| x)=A x=W(|A| x)
$$

for all $v \in \mathcal{R}(|A|)$. So $V=W$.
Aside 202 (Vandermonde matrices). Suppose $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{k}$ are distinct. Set

$$
V=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & \ldots & 1 \\
\lambda_{1} & \ldots & \lambda_{k} \\
\lambda_{1}^{2} & \ldots & \lambda_{k}^{2} \\
\vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
\lambda_{1}^{k-1} & \ldots & \lambda_{k}^{k-1}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Claim 203. $V$ is invertible.
Proof. Note that $\sigma(V)=\sigma\left(V^{t}\right)$. It suffices to show that $\mathcal{N}\left(V^{t}\right)=\{0\}$. But

$$
V^{t}\left(\begin{array}{c}
p_{0} \\
\vdots \\
p_{k-1}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
p_{0}+p_{1} \lambda_{1}+\cdots+p_{k-1} \lambda_{1}^{k-1} \\
\vdots \\
p_{0}+p_{1} \lambda_{k}+\cdots+p_{k-1} \lambda_{k}^{k-1}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
p\left(\lambda_{1}\right) \\
\vdots \\
p\left(\lambda_{k}\right)
\end{array}\right)
$$

So if all the entries are 0 , we have $p(t)$ is degree $k$ with $k$ distinct zeroes; so $p_{i}=0$ for all $i$.Claim 203

Problem: given $A v_{i}=\lambda_{i} v_{i}$ with $v_{i} \neq 0$ and $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{k}$ distinct, show the $v_{i}$ are linearly independent. Suppose now that $a_{1} v_{1}+\cdots+a_{k} v_{k}=0$. Applying $A^{i}$, we get $a_{1} \lambda_{1}^{i} v_{1}+\cdots+a_{k} \lambda_{k}^{i} v_{k}=0$. Take any $w \in \mathbb{C}^{n}$; then

$$
\begin{aligned}
w^{*}\left(a_{1} v_{1}\right)+\cdots+w^{*}\left(a_{k} v_{k}\right) & =0 \\
& \vdots \\
\lambda_{1}^{k-1} w^{*}\left(a_{1} v_{1}\right)+\cdots+\lambda_{k}^{k-1} w^{*}\left(a_{k} v_{k}\right) & =0
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & \cdots & 1 \\
\lambda_{1} & \cdots & \lambda_{k} \\
\vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\
\lambda_{1}^{k-1} & \cdots & \lambda_{k}^{k-1}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{c}
w^{*}\left(a_{1} v_{1}\right) \\
\vdots \\
w^{*}\left(a_{k} v_{k}\right)
\end{array}\right)=0
$$

So $w^{*}\left(a_{j} v_{j}\right)=0$ for all $j$ and $w$. So $a_{j} v_{j}=0$ for all $j$, and all $a_{j}=0$.
Recall that $\|A x\|=\||A| x\|$, so $A x=0$ if and only if $|A| x=0$; i.e. $\mathcal{N}(A)=\mathcal{N}(|A|)$. We showed there is a unique isometry $W: \mathcal{R}(|A|) \rightarrow \mathcal{R}(A)$ such that $A=W|A|$. (This is the polar decomposition, analogous to $z=\exp (i \theta)|z|$.

Theorem 204 (Polar Decomposition II). Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then there is a unitary $U$ such that $A=U|A|$.
Proof. We know there is a unique isometry $W: \mathcal{R}(|A|) \rightarrow \mathcal{R}(A)$ such that $A=W|A|$; note that both the domain and the codomain are subset of $\mathbb{C}^{n} . \operatorname{So} \operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{R}(A))=\operatorname{dim}(\mathcal{R}(|A|))$. We also saw that for any subspace $V \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{n}$, we have $V+V^{\perp}=\mathbb{C}^{n}$ and $V \cap V^{\perp}=\{0\}$. So $\operatorname{dim}\left(V^{\perp}\right)=n-\operatorname{dim}(V)$, and in particular we have $\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{R}(A)^{\perp}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{R}(|A|)^{\perp}\right)$. Let $\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathcal{R}(A)^{\perp}\right)=d$. Pick $\left\{z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d}\right\}$ an orthonormal basis for $\mathcal{R}(|A|)^{\perp}$; pick $\left\{\widetilde{z_{1}}, \ldots, \widetilde{z_{d}}\right\}$ an orthonormal basis for $\mathcal{R}(A)^{\perp}$. Every vector in $\mathbb{C}^{n}$ has a unique decomposition $|A| x+z$ where $|A| x \in \mathcal{R}(|A|)$ and $z \in \mathcal{R}(|A|)^{\perp}$. We may then find $\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{d}$ such that $z=\alpha_{1} z_{1}+\cdots+\alpha_{d} z_{d}$. Define $U: \mathbb{C}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{n}$ by $U(|A| x+z)=A x+\alpha_{1} \widetilde{z_{1}}+\cdots+\alpha_{d} \widetilde{z_{d}}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|U(|A| x+z)\|^{2} & =\left\|A x+\alpha_{1} \widetilde{z_{1}}+\cdots+\alpha_{d} \widetilde{z_{d}}\right\|^{2} \\
& =\|A x\|^{2}+\left|\alpha_{1}\right|^{2}+\cdots+\left|\alpha_{d}\right|^{2} \\
& =\||A| x\|^{2}+\left\|\alpha_{1} z_{1}+\cdots+\alpha_{d} z_{d}\right\|^{2} \\
& =\left\||A| x+\alpha_{1} z_{1}+\cdots+\alpha_{d} z_{d}\right\|^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

So $U: \mathbb{C}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{n}$ is an isometry; so $U$ is a unitary. But $U|A| x=U(|A x|)=A x$; so $U|A|=A$. So $U$ is our desired unitary.Theorem 204

Corollary 205. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$; then there is unitary $V$ such that $A=\left|A^{*}\right| V$.
Proof. Note that $A^{*}=U\left|A^{*}\right|$; so $A=\left|A^{*}\right| U^{*}$. We then set $V=U^{*}$.
Corollary 206 (Singular value decomposition I). Suppose $A \in M_{n}$; let $S=\operatorname{diag}\left(S_{1}(A), \ldots, S_{n}(A)\right)$. Then there are isometries $U, V$ such that $A=U S V$.

Proof. Write $A=U_{1}|A|$ as above. Now, $|A| \geq 0$, so there is unitary $V$ such that $|A|=V^{*} S V$ for some unitary $V$. Then $A=\left(U_{1} V^{*}\right) S V$, and we have our $U=U_{1} V^{*}$.Corollary 206

Corollary 207 (Singular value decomposition II). Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then there is $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ and $\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ orthonormal such that

$$
A=\sum_{k=1}^{n} S_{k}(A) u_{k} v_{k}^{*}
$$

Proof. Write $A=U S V$ as above. Write $U=\left[u_{1}|\ldots| u_{n}\right]$; then $\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}\right\}$ is orthonormal. Write $V^{*}=\left[w_{1}|\cdots| w_{n}\right]$; then $\left\{w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n}\right\}$ is orthonormal, and

$$
V=\left(\begin{array}{c}
w_{1}^{*} \\
\vdots \\
w_{n}^{*}
\end{array}\right)
$$

So

$$
\begin{aligned}
A & =U S V \\
& =\left[u_{1}|\cdots| u_{n}\right]\left(\begin{array}{c}
s_{1} w_{1}^{*} \\
\vdots \\
s_{n} w_{n}^{*}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{n} u_{k}\left(s_{k} w_{k}^{*}\right) \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{n} s_{k} u_{k} w_{k}^{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

### 7.5 Schur products

Definition 208. Suppose $A=\left[a_{i, j}\right]$ and $B=\left[b_{i, j}\right]$ in $M_{m, n}$. We define the Schur (or Hadamard or freshman) product is $A \circ B=\left[a_{i, j} b_{i, j}\right]$.

## Proposition 209.

1. (a) $A \circ B=B \circ A$
(b) $(A \circ B) \circ C=A \circ(B \circ C)$
(c) $A \circ(B+C)=A \circ B+A \circ C$
(d) $\lambda(A \circ B)=(\lambda A) \circ B=A \circ(\lambda B)$

So $\circ: M_{m, n} \times M_{m, n} \rightarrow M_{m, n}$ is bilinear.
2. If $J_{m, n}$ is the matrix of all 1 , then $J_{m, n} \circ A=A=A \circ J_{m, n}$.

Theorem 210. Suppose $A, B \in M_{n}$ with $A \geq 0$ and $B \geq 0$. Then $A \circ B \geq 0$.
Proof. Write

$$
\begin{aligned}
A & =\sum x_{i} x_{i}^{*} \\
B & =\sum y_{i} y_{i}^{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

$$
A \circ B=\sum_{i, j}\left(x_{i} x_{i}^{*}\right) \circ\left(y_{i} y_{i}^{*}\right)
$$

So it suffices to prove that given

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\alpha_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\alpha_{n}
\end{array}\right) \\
& y=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\beta_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\beta_{n}
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

we have $\left(x x^{*}\right) \circ\left(y y^{*}\right) \geq 0$. Let

$$
z=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\alpha_{1} \beta_{1} \\
\vdots \\
\alpha_{n} \beta_{n}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $\left(x x^{*}\right) \circ\left(y y^{*}\right)=\left(\alpha_{i} \overline{\alpha_{j}}\right) \circ\left(\beta_{i} \overline{\beta_{j}}\right)=\left(\alpha_{i} \overline{\alpha_{j} \beta_{j}}\right)=z z^{*} \geq 0$.

### 7.6 The positive semidefinite ordering

Given $A=A^{*}$ and $B=B^{*}$ in $M_{n}$, we write $A \geq B$ (or $B \leq A$ ) if and only if $A-B$ is positive semidefinite. Similarly, we write $A>B$ or $B<A$ if and only if $a-B$ is positive definite.

Proposition 211. Suppose $A=A^{*}, B=B^{*}$, and $C=C^{*}$ in $M_{n}$. Then

1. If $A \leq B$ and $B \leq A$, then $A=B$.
2. If $A \leq B$ and $B \leq C$, then $A \leq C$.
3. If $A \leq B$ then $A+C \leq B+C$.
4. If $A \leq B$ and $X \in M_{n, m}$, then $X^{*} A X \leq X^{*} B X$.

Lemma 212. Suppose $A \geq I$. Then $I \geq A^{-1}>0$.
Proof. Since $A=A^{*}$, we may let $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$ be the eigenvalues, and find orthonormal $\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ such that $A v_{i}=\lambda_{i} v_{i}$. Then since $A \geq I$ we have $A-I \geq 0$; so $\lambda_{i}-1=\left\langle\left(\lambda_{i}-1\right) v_{i}, v_{i}\right\rangle=\left\langle(A-I) v_{i}, v_{i}\right\rangle \geq 0$ for all $i$. So $A^{-1} v_{i}=\lambda_{i}^{-1} v_{i}$ and $\lambda_{i}^{-1} \leq 1$ for all $i$. So if

$$
x=\sum \alpha_{i} v_{i}
$$

then

$$
\left\langle\left(I-A^{-1}\right) x, x\right\rangle=\left\langle\sum_{i}\left(1-\lambda_{i}\right)^{-1} \alpha_{i} v_{i}, \sum_{j} \alpha_{j} v_{j}\right\rangle=\sum\left(1-\lambda_{i}\right)^{-1}\left|\alpha_{i}\right|^{2} \geq 0
$$

Theorem 213. Suppose $A=A^{*}$ and $B=B^{*}$ are in $M_{n}$.

1. If $A \geq B>0$ then $A^{-1} \leq B^{-1}$.
2. If $A \geq B \geq 0$ then $\operatorname{det}(A) \geq \operatorname{det}(B)$ and $\operatorname{tr}(A) \geq \operatorname{tr}(B)$.
3. If $A \geq B$ then $\lambda_{k}(A) \geq \lambda_{k}(B)$.

Proof.

1. Suppose $A \geq B>0$. Then $B^{-\frac{1}{2}} A B^{-\frac{1}{2}} \geq B^{-\frac{1}{2}} B B^{-\frac{1}{2}}=I$; so, by the lemma, we have $\left(B^{-\frac{1}{2}} A^{-1} B^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)^{-1} \leq$ $I$. So $A^{-1} \leq B^{-\frac{1}{2}} I B^{-\frac{1}{2}}=B^{-1}$.
2. Follows from (3).
3. Recall that b Courant-Fischer, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda_{k}(A) & =\min _{\operatorname{dim}(S)=k} \max _{\substack{x \in S \\
\|x\|=1}}\langle A x, x\rangle \\
& \geq \operatorname{mim}_{\operatorname{dim}(S)=k} \max _{\substack{x \in S \\
\|x\|=1}}\langle B x, x\rangle \\
& =\lambda_{k}(B)
\end{aligned}
$$

Theorem 214. Suppose $P \in M_{n}$ and $S \subseteq\{1, \ldots, n\}$. If $P>0$, then $P^{-1}[S, S] \geq(P[S, S])^{-1}$.
Proof. By permuting, it suffices to check the case $S=\{1, \ldots, k\}$. Partition

$$
P=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & B \\
B^{*} & C
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $A \in M_{k}$. Likewise partition

$$
P^{-1}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
D & E \\
E^{*} & F
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $P^{-1}[S, S]=D$. We wish to show that $D \geq A^{-1}$. Recall that in Cholesky we showed that if $X=-A^{-1} B$, then

$$
P=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & B \\
B^{*} & C
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & 0 \\
-X^{*} & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & 0 \\
0 & C-B^{*} A^{-1} B
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & -X \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)
$$

So

$$
\begin{aligned}
P^{-1} & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & -X \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)^{-1}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A & 0 \\
0 & C-B^{*} A^{-1} B
\end{array}\right)^{-1}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & 0 \\
-X^{*} & I
\end{array}\right)^{-1} \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & X \\
0 x I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A^{-1} & 0 \\
0 & \left(C-B^{*} A^{-1} B\right)^{-1}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & 0 \\
X^{*} & I
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & X \\
0 & I
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 \\
\left(C-B^{*} A^{-1} B\right)^{-1} X^{*} & \left(C-B^{*} A^{-1} B\right)^{-1}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A^{-1}+X\left(C-B^{*} A^{-1} B\right)^{-1} X^{*} & * \\
* & *
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

So $D=A^{-1}+X\left(C-B^{*} A^{-1} B\right)^{-1} X^{*}$. But by Cholesky, we have $C-B^{*} A B>0$; so $X\left(C-B^{*} A^{-1} B\right)^{-1} X^{*} \geq 0$, and $D-A^{-1} \geq 0$; so $D \geq A^{-1}$.Theorem 214

## 8 Matrix norms

Definition 215. Suppose $V$ is a vector space. We say $\|\cdot\|: V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a norm provided the following hold:

1. $\|v\| \geq 0$ for all $v \in V$.
2. $\|v\|=0$ if and only if $v=0$.
3. $\|\lambda v\|=|\lambda| v$
4. $\|v+w\| \leq\|v\|+\|w\|$.

Given a norm, the function $d(v, w)=\|v-w\|$ defines a metric on $V$.
Example 216.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|v\|_{w} & =\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|v_{i}\right|^{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\
\|v\|_{1} & =\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|v_{i}\right| \\
\|v\|_{\infty} & =\max \left\{\left|v_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|v_{n}\right|\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Fact 217. When $\operatorname{dim}(V)<\infty$, all norms are equivalent. i.e. given any two norms $\|\cdot\|_{1}$ and $\|\cdot\|_{2}$, there are $c_{1}, c_{2}$ such that for all $v \in V$ we have $\|v\|_{1} \leq c_{2}\|v\|_{2}$ and $\|v\|_{2} \leq c_{1}\|v\|_{1}$. Consequently, for any norm, we have $d\left(v_{n}, 0\right)=\left\|v_{n}\right\| \rightarrow 0$ if and only if all components tend to 0 .

Definition 218. A norm on $M_{n}$ is called a matrix norm provided $\|A B\| \leq\|A\|\|B\|$ for all $A, B \in M_{n}$ (submultiplicative).

Remark 219. We don't require that $\|I\|=1$.
Example 220. For $A \in M_{n}$, set

$$
\|A\|_{2}=\left(\sum\left|a_{i, j}\right|^{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}
$$

is a matrix norm. To see this, suppose $C=A B$. Then

$$
\left|c_{i, j}\right|=\left(\sum_{k} a_{i k} b_{k j}\right)^{2} \leq\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left|a_{i k}^{2}\right|\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\sum_{\ell=1}^{n}\left|b_{\ell j}^{2}\right|\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}
$$

So

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|C\|_{2}^{2} & =\sum_{i, j}\left|c_{i, j}\right|^{2} \\
& \leq \sum_{i, j}\left(\sum_{k}\left|a_{i, k}\right|^{2}\right)\left(\sum_{\ell}\left|b_{\ell, j}\right|^{2}\right) \\
& =\left(\sum_{i, k}\left|a_{i k}^{2}\right|\right)\left(\sum_{j, \ell}\left|b_{\ell j}\right|^{2}\right) \\
& =\|A\|_{2}^{2}\|B\|_{2}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Note, however that $\left\|I_{n}\right\|_{2}=\sqrt{n}$.
Example 221. Let

$$
\|A\|_{1}=\sum_{i, j=1}^{n}\left|a_{i j}\right|
$$

This too is a matrix norm; here we have $\left\|I_{n}\right\|_{1}=n$.
Example 222. Set

$$
\|A\|_{\infty}=\max _{i, j}\left|a_{i, j}\right|
$$

Let $J_{n}$ be the $n \times n$ matrix of all 1 . Then $J_{n}^{2}=n J_{n}$. But $\left\|J_{n}\right\|_{\infty}=1$ and $n=\left\|J_{n}^{2}\right\|_{\infty} \not 又\left\|J_{n}\right\|_{\infty}\left\|J_{n}\right\|_{\infty}$. Example 223. Given any norm $\|\cdot\|$ on $\mathbb{C}^{n}$, we define the induced operator norm on $M_{n}$ by

$$
\|A\|=\sup \{\|A x\|:\|x\|=1\}
$$

This is always a matrix norm; here $\|I\|=1$.
Example 224. Start with $\|\cdot\|_{2}$ on $\mathbb{C}^{n}$. Set $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}\right)$. Then the induced norm of $D$ is

$$
\|D\|_{2}=\sup \left\{\|\left(\lambda_{1} x_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n} x_{n}\|:\|\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \|_{2}=1\right\}\right.
$$

So $\|D\|_{2} \geq\left|\lambda_{j}\right|$ for all $j$; so $\|D\|_{2} \geq \max \left\{\left|\lambda_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|\lambda_{n}\right|\right\}$. Conversely, we have

$$
\left\|\left(\lambda_{1} x_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{n} x_{n}\right)\right\|_{2}^{2}=\sum\left|\lambda_{j}\right|^{2}\left|x_{j}\right|^{2} \leq \max \left\{\left|\lambda_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|\lambda_{n}\right|\right\} \sum\left|x_{j}\right|^{2}
$$

So $\|D\|_{2} \leq \max \left\{\left|\lambda_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|\lambda_{n}\right|\right\}$. So $\|D\|_{2}=\max \left\{\left|\lambda_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|\lambda_{n}\right|\right\}$.
Proposition 225. Suppose $\|\cdot\|$ is any matrix norm on $M_{n}$. Then

1. $\|I\| \geq 1$.
2. If $A \in M_{n}^{-1}$, then $\|A\| \geq \frac{\|I\|}{\|A\|}$.
3. For all $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$, we have $|\lambda| \leq \rho(A) \leq\|A\|$.

Proof.

1. $I^{2}=I$ so $\|I\|=\left\|I^{2}\right\| \leq\|I\|^{2}$; so $1 \leq\|I\|$.
2. $\|I\|=\left\|A A^{-1}\right\| \leq\|A\|\left\|A^{-1}\right\|$.
3. Let $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$. Then there is non-zero $x$ such that $A x=\lambda x$. Pick any $y \neq 0 ;$ let $X=\lambda y^{*}$. Then $A X=(A x) y^{*}=\lambda X$. So

$$
|\lambda|\|X\|=\|\lambda X\|=\|A X\| \leq\|A\|\|X\|
$$

So $|\lambda| \leq\|A\|$. But this holds for all $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$. So $\rho(A) \leq\|A\|$.
Proposition 225
Theorem 226. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then $\rho(A)=\inf \{\|A\|:\|\cdot\|$ a matrix norm $\}$.
Proof. By (3) we have $\rho(A)=\inf \{\|A\|:\|\cdot\|$ a matrix norm $\}$. Given any matrix norm $\|\cdot\|$ and $S \in M_{n}^{-1}$, define $\|A\|_{S}=\left\|S^{-1} A S\right\|$; this is a matrix norm. By Schur there is $U$ unitary such that $U^{*} A U=T=\left(t_{i, j}\right)$ is upper triangular and $t_{i i}=\lambda_{i}$. Fix $r>0$. Let $D_{r}=\operatorname{diag}\left(1, r, \ldots, r^{n-1}\right.$. Then

$$
D_{r}^{-1} T D_{r}=\left(t_{i, j} r^{-i+j}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\lambda_{1} & r t_{12} & \cdots & r^{n+1} t_{1, n} \\
& \ddots & \ddots & \\
& & \lambda_{n-1} & r t_{n-1, n} \\
0 & & & \lambda_{n}
\end{array}\right)
$$

So $S=U D_{r}$. then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|A\|_{S} & =\left\|D+r T_{1}+\cdots+r^{n-1} T_{n-1}\right\| \\
& \leq\|D\|+r\left\|T_{1}\right\|+\cdots+r^{n-1}\left\|T_{n-1}\right\|
\end{aligned}
$$

Given $\varepsilon>0$, for $r$ small enough, this is $\leq\|D\|+\varepsilon$. But we can do this starting with any matrix norm; starting with operator norm induced by $\|\cdot\|_{2}$, we get $\|D\|=\max \left\{\left|\lambda_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|\lambda_{n}\right|\right\}=\rho(A)$. So $\inf \{\|A\|:\|\cdot\|$ a matrix norm $\} \leq \rho(A)+\varepsilon$.

Corollary 227. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ with $\rho(A)<1$. Then $A^{k} \rightarrow 0$ as $k \rightarrow \infty$.
Proof. Pick $\|\mid \cdot\|$ a matrix norm such that $\rho(A)<\| \| A \|<1$. Then $\left\|A^{k}\right\| \leq\|A\|^{k} \rightarrow 0$. So $\left\|\left\|A^{k}\right\| \rightarrow 0\right.$, and $A^{k} \rightarrow 0$.

Theorem 228 (Gelfand). Suppose $\|\cdot \cdot\|$ is any matrix norm on $M_{n}$; suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then

$$
\rho(A)=\lim _{n}\left\|A^{n}\right\|^{\frac{1}{n}}
$$

Proof. Recall that $\sigma\left(A^{k}\right)=\left\{\lambda^{k}: \lambda \in \sigma(A)\right\}$; so $\rho\left(A^{k}\right)=\rho(A)^{k}$. So $\rho(A)^{k}=\rho\left(A^{k}\right) \leq\left\|A^{k}\right\|$, and $\rho(A) \leq\left\|A^{k}\right\| \|^{\frac{1}{k}}$. Let $\varepsilon>0$; let $r=\rho(A)+\varepsilon$. Then $\rho\left(\frac{A}{r}\right)<1$. So, by our corollary, we have $\left\|\left(\frac{A}{r}\right)^{k}\right\| \rightarrow 0$. So there is $k_{0}$ such that $\left\|\left(\frac{A}{r}\right)^{k}\right\|<1$ for all $k \geq k_{0}$. So $\left\|A^{k}\right\|<r^{k}$ for all $k \geq k_{0}$. So $\left\|A^{k}\right\|^{\frac{1}{k}}<\rho(A)+\varepsilon$ for all $k \geq k_{0}$. So for all $k \geq k_{0}$, we have

$$
\left|\left\|A^{k}\right\| \|^{\frac{1}{k}}-\rho(A)\right|<\varepsilon
$$

So

$$
\lim _{k}\left\|A^{k}\right\| \frac{1}{k}=\rho(A)
$$

### 8.1 Power series

If

$$
p(z)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_{k} z^{k}
$$

we set

$$
\limsup _{k}\left|p_{k}\right|^{\frac{1}{k}}=\frac{1}{R}
$$

where $R$ is the radius of convergence. Given a matrix $A \in M_{n}$, consider

$$
p(A)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_{k} A^{k}
$$

Let

$$
B_{n}=\sum_{k=0}^{n} p_{k} A^{k}
$$

If $B_{n} \rightarrow B$, then we write $B=p(A)$. Recall that ( $B_{n}: n \in \mathbb{N}$ ) converges if and only if $\left\{B_{n}\right\}$ is Cauchy.
Theorem 229. Suppose

$$
p(z)=\sum_{p=0}^{\infty} p_{k} z^{k}
$$

with radius of convergence $R>0$. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ satisfies $\rho(A)<R$. Then

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_{k} A^{k}
$$

converges.
Proof. Pick $r_{1}, r_{2}$ such that $\rho(A)<r_{1}<r_{2}<R$. Then there is $k_{1}$ such that $\left\|A^{k}\right\|^{\frac{1}{k}}<r_{1}$ for all $k \geq k_{1}$. Since $\frac{1}{R}<\frac{1}{r_{2}}$, we have that there is $k_{2}$ such that

$$
\sup \left\{\left|p_{k}\right|^{\frac{1}{k}}: k \geq k_{2}\right\}<\frac{1}{r_{2}}
$$

So $\left|p_{k}\right|<\frac{1}{r_{2}^{k}}$ for all $k \geq k_{2}$. Let $k_{0}=\max \left\{k_{1}, k_{2}\right\}$. Then for all $k \geq k_{0}$ we have

$$
\left\|p_{k} A^{k}\right\|=\left|p_{k}\right|\left\|A^{k}\right\| \leq\left(\frac{r_{1}}{r_{2}}\right)^{k}<1
$$

Thus for all $n, m>k_{0}$ we have

$$
\left\|B_{n}-B_{m}\right\|=\left\|\sum_{k=m+1}^{n} p_{k} A^{k}\right\| \leq \sum_{k=m+1}^{n}\left(\frac{r_{1}}{r_{2}}\right)^{k}
$$

Thus ( $B_{n}: n \in \mathbb{N}$ ) is Cauchy; so ( $B_{n}: n \in \mathbb{N}$ ) converges.
Corollary 230. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. If there is a matrix norm $\|\cdot\| \|$ such that $\|I-A\|<1$, then $A$ is invertible.
Proof. We know that

$$
\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(I-A)^{k}
$$

But

$$
B_{n}=\sum_{k=0}^{n}(I-A)^{k}
$$

so

$$
\begin{aligned}
A B_{n} & =(I-(I-A)) B_{n} \\
& =\sum_{k=0}^{n}(I-A)^{k}-\sum_{k=1}^{n+1}(I-A)^{k} \\
& =I-(I-A)^{n+1} \\
& \rightarrow I
\end{aligned}
$$

So if

$$
B=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}(I-A)^{k}=\lim _{n} B_{n}
$$

then

$$
A B=\lim _{n} A B_{n}=I
$$Corollary 230

### 8.2 Gersgorin disks

Suppose $A \in M_{n}$; write $A=D+B$ with $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(a_{11}, \ldots, a_{n n}\right)$ and $B$ has 0 on the diagonal. For each $i$, define

$$
R_{i}^{\prime}(A)=\sum_{j \neq i}\left|a_{i j}\right|
$$

Let

$$
\Omega_{i}=\left\{z \in \mathbb{C}:\left|z-a_{i i}\right| \leq R_{i}^{\prime}(A)\right\}
$$

These are the Gersgorin disks.
Theorem 231. Suppose $A=\left(a_{i j}\right) \in M_{n}$. Then

$$
\sigma(A) \subseteq \bigcup_{i=1}^{n} \Omega_{i}
$$

Proof. Suppose $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$; say $A x=\lambda x$ for $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \neq 0$. Pick $p$ such that $\left|x_{p}\right|=\max \left\{\left|x_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|x_{n}\right|\right\}=$ $\|x\|_{\infty} \neq 0$. Then

$$
\lambda x_{p}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{p, j} x_{j}
$$

and

$$
\left(\lambda-a_{p, p}\right) x_{p}=\sum_{j \neq p} a_{p, j} x_{j}
$$

So

$$
\left|\lambda-a_{p p}\right|\left|x_{p}\right| \leq \sum_{j \neq p}\left|a_{p, j}\right|\left|x_{p}\right|
$$

and

$$
\left|\lambda-a_{p p}\right| \leq R_{p}^{\prime}(A)
$$

So $\lambda \in \Omega_{p}=\left\{z:\left|z-a_{p p}\right| \leq R_{p}^{\prime}(A)\right\}$, and

$$
\lambda \in \bigcup_{i=1}^{n} \Omega_{i}
$$

So

$$
\sigma(A) \subseteq \bigcup_{i=1}^{n} \Omega_{i}
$$

Let

$$
C_{j}^{\prime}(A)=\sum_{i \neq j}\left|a_{i j}\right|
$$

Let $\widetilde{\Omega_{j}}=\left\{z:\left|z-a_{j j}\right| \leq C_{j}^{\prime}(A)\right\}$.
Corollary 232. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then

$$
\sigma(A) \subseteq\left(\bigcup_{i=1}^{n} \Omega_{i}\right) \cap\left(\bigcup_{j=1}^{n} \widetilde{\Omega_{j}}\right)
$$

Proof. Simply observe that $\sigma(A)=\sigma\left(A^{t}\right)$.
Definition 233. We define the Gersgorin set of $A \in M_{n}$ to be

$$
G(A)=\bigcup_{i=1}^{n} \Omega_{i}
$$

Then the above theorem states that $\sigma(A) \subseteq G(A)$.
Aside 234 (Some complex analysis). Suppose $\gamma:[0,1] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ is smooth with $\gamma(0)=\gamma(1)$. Let $\Gamma=\{\gamma(t): 0 \leq$ $t \leq 1\}$. If $\Gamma$ does not intersect itself, we can sensibly define $\int(\Gamma)$ and $\operatorname{ext}(\Gamma)$. We then set

$$
\int_{\Gamma} f(z) d z=\int_{0}^{1} f(\gamma(t)) \gamma^{\prime}(t) d t
$$

Recall from complex analysis that if $p(z)$ is a polynomial with $p(\gamma(t)) \neq 0$ for all $t \in[0,1]$, then

$$
\frac{1}{2 \pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{p^{\prime}(z)}{p(z)} d z
$$

is the number of roots of $p$ inside $\Gamma$ with multiplicities.
Theorem 235. Suppose $A=\left(a_{i j}\right) \in M_{n}$; suppose $\Omega_{1}, \ldots, \Omega_{n}$ are the Gersgorin disks. Suppose

$$
\left(\Omega_{i_{1}} \cup \cdots \cup \Omega_{i_{k}}\right) \cap\left(\bigcup_{i \notin\left\{i_{1}, \ldots, i_{k}\right\}} \Omega_{i}\right)=\emptyset
$$

Then there are $k$ roots of $p_{A}(t)$ inside $\Omega_{i_{1}} \cup \cdots \cup \Omega_{i_{k}}$.
Proof. Write $A=D+B$ where $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(a_{11}, \ldots, a_{n n}\right)$. Define $A_{s}=D+s B$; so $A_{0}=D$ and $A_{1}=A$. Take a $\Gamma$ such that $\Omega_{i_{1}} \cup \cdots \cup \Omega_{i_{k}} \subseteq \int(\Gamma)$ and

$$
\bigcup_{i \notin\left\{i_{1}, \ldots, i_{k}\right\}} \Omega_{i} \subseteq \operatorname{ext}(\Gamma)
$$

Let $p_{s}(z)=\operatorname{det}\left(z I-A_{s}\right)=p_{A_{s}}(z)$. Let

$$
N(s)=\frac{1}{2 \pi i} \int_{\Gamma} \frac{p_{s}^{\prime}(z)}{p_{s}(z)} d z
$$

(Since $G\left(A_{s}\right) \subseteq G(A)$, we know $p_{s}(z) \neq 0$ on $\Gamma$.) Then $N(s)$ is the number of roots of $p_{s}(t)$ inside $\Gamma$. Note, however, that $p_{s}$ varies continuously with $s$; so $N(s)$ is a continuous function of $s$. But $N(s)$ is integer-valued; so $N(s)$ is constant. So $N(0)=N(1)$. But $A_{0}=D$, and $p_{D}(z)=\left(z-a_{11}\right) \ldots\left(z-a_{n n}\right)$ has $k$ roots inside $\Gamma$. So $N(0)=k$. So $N(1)=k$. But $N(1)$ is the number of roots of $p_{A}(z)$ inside $\Gamma$. Thus, by Gersgorin, we're done.Theorem 235

Let $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{n}\right)$ with all $p_{i}>0$. Then

$$
D^{-1} A D=\left(a_{i j} p_{i}^{-1} p_{j}\right)
$$

and $\sigma(A)=\sigma\left(D^{-1} A D\right) \subseteq G\left(D^{-1} A D\right)$. Then

$$
R_{i}^{\prime}=\sum_{j \neq i} p_{i}^{-1}\left|a_{i j}\right| v_{j}=p_{i}^{-1}\left(\sum_{j \neq i}\left|a_{i j}\right| p_{j}\right)
$$

This yields the following corollary:
Corollary 236. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then

$$
\sigma(A) \subseteq \bigcap_{p_{1}, \ldots, p_{n}>0}\left(\bigcup_{i=1}^{n}\left\{z:\left|z-a_{i i} \leq p_{i}^{-1}\left(\sum_{j \neq i}\left|a_{i j}\right| p_{j}\right)\right|\right\}\right)
$$

Proof. RHS is

$$
\bigcap_{p_{1}, \ldots, p_{n}} G\left(D_{p}^{-1} A D_{p}\right)
$$

Corollary 236
Aside 237. An ellipse is given by $r$ and foci $a, b$; it is then

$$
\{z:|z-a|+|z-b|=r\}
$$

An oval of Cassini is analogous:

$$
\{z:|z-a||z-b|=r\}
$$

Theorem 238 (Brauer). Suppose $A=\left(a_{i j}\right) \in M_{n}$ for $n \geq 2$. Then

$$
\sigma(A) \subseteq \bigcup_{i \neq j}\left\{z:\left|z-a_{i i}\right|\left|z-a_{j j}\right| \leq r_{i}^{\prime} R_{j}^{\prime}\right\}
$$

where

$$
R_{i}^{\prime}=\sum_{j \neq i}\left|a_{i j}\right|
$$

Fact 239. The union of these ovals is contained in $G(A)$.
Proof of Theorem 238. Suppose $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$; say $A x=\lambda x$ for $x \neq 0$. Let $\left|x_{p}\right|=\max \left\{\left|x_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|x_{n}\right|\right\} \neq 0$. If

$$
\max _{i \neq p}\left|x_{i}\right|=0
$$

then $x=x_{p} e_{p}$. So $(A x)_{p}=a_{p p} x_{p} e_{p}=\lambda\left(x_{p} e_{p}\right)$; so $\lambda=a_{p p}$, and $\lambda \in$ RHS.
Assume then that

$$
\left|x_{q}\right|=\max _{i \neq p}\left|x_{i}\right| \neq 0
$$

Then

$$
\lambda x_{p}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{p j} x_{j}
$$

So

$$
\left|\left(\lambda-a_{p p}\right) x_{p}\right|=\left|\sum_{j \neq p} a_{p j} x_{j}\right| \leq \sum_{j \neq p}\left|a_{p j}\right|\left|x_{q}\right|=\left|x_{q}\right| R_{p}^{\prime}
$$

So

$$
\left|\lambda-a_{p p}\right| \leq \frac{\left|x_{q}\right|}{\left|x_{p}\right|} R_{p}^{\prime}
$$

But we also have

$$
\lambda x_{q}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{q j} x_{j}
$$

So

$$
\left|\left(\lambda-a_{q q}\right) x_{q}\right|=\left|\sum_{j \neq q} a_{q j} x_{j}\right| \leq\left|x_{p}\right| R_{q}^{\prime}
$$

So

$$
\left|\lambda-a_{q q}\right| \leq \frac{\left|x_{p}\right|}{\left|x_{q}\right|} R_{q}^{\prime}
$$

Putting it all together, we have

$$
\left|\lambda-a_{p p}\right|\left|\lambda-a_{q q}\right| \leq R_{p}^{\prime} R_{q}^{\prime}
$$

so $\lambda \in$ RHS.Theorem 238

Definition 240. $A=\left(a_{i j}\right)$ is (strictly) diagonally dominant provided

$$
\left|a_{i i}\right| \geq \sum_{j \neq i}\left|a_{i j}\right|=R_{i}^{\prime}
$$

for diagonally dominant, and

$$
\left|a_{i i}\right|>\sum_{j \neq i}\left|a_{i j}\right|=R_{i}^{\prime}
$$

for strictly diagonally dominant.
Theorem 241. Suppose $A=\left(a_{i j}\right)$ is strictly diagonally dominant. Then

1. $A \in M_{n}^{-1}$.
2. If $a_{i i}>0$, then $\sigma(A) \subseteq\{\lambda: \operatorname{Re}(\lambda)>0\}$; we call this latter set the right half-plane (RHP).
3. If $A=A^{*}$ and al $a_{i i}>0$, then $A$ is positive definite.

Proof.

1. $0 \notin G(A)$ implies $0 \notin \sigma(A)$, since $\sigma(A) \subseteq G(A)$.
2. Note that $G(A) \subseteq$ RHP.
3. By (1), we have $A \in M_{n}^{-1}$. Also $\sigma(A) \subseteq$ RHP. But $A=A^{*}$, so $\sigma(A) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$. So $\sigma(A) \subseteq(0, \infty)$, and $A$ is positive definite.

## 9 Non-negative matrices

Used in combinatorics, probability, and Markov chains.
An application: suppose $A=\left(a_{i j}\right)$ with $a_{i j} \in \mathbb{N} \cup\{0\}$. We interpret this as a directed graph, where $a_{i j}$ is the number of edges from vertex $j$ to vertex $i$. Then $\left(A^{k}\right)_{i, j}$ is the number of paths of length $k$ from $j$ to $i$.

Another application: imagine you have states $\{1, \ldots, n\}$ with $p(i \mid j)$ the probability of going from state $j$ to state $i$. Let $P=(p(i \mid j))$. Let

$$
q=\left(\begin{array}{c}
q_{1} \\
\vdots \\
q_{n}
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $q_{i} \geq 0$ and $q_{1}+\cdots+q_{n}=1$; we interpret $q_{i}$ as the probability of initially being in state $i$. Then $(P q)_{i}$ is the probability that after one event we are in state $i$. We can ask whether $P^{k} q$ converges as $k \rightarrow \infty$.

Definition 242. Suppose $A=\left(a_{i j}\right) \in M_{m, n}$. We say $A$ is non-negative $\left.(0 \preceq A)\right)$ if $a_{i j} \geq 0$ for all $i, j$. We say $A$ is positive $(0 \prec A)$ if $a_{i j}>0$ for all $i, j$. If $A, B \in M_{m, n}(\mathbb{R})$, we write $A \preceq B$ if $b_{i j} \geq a_{i j}$ for all $i$, $j$; we say $A \prec B$ if $b_{i j}>a_{i j}$ for all $i, j$. We write $|A|_{e}=\left(\left|a_{i j}\right|\right)$.

## Proposition 243.

1. $|a A|_{e}=|a||A|_{e}$.
2. $|A+B|_{e} \preceq|A|_{e}+|B|_{e}$.
3. If $0 \preceq A, 0 \preceq B, a \geq 0$, and $b \geq 0$, then $0 \preceq a A+b B$.
4. If $A \preceq B$ and $C \preceq D$, then $A+C \preceq B+D$.
5. $|A B|_{e} \leq|A|_{e}|B|_{e}$.
6. Suppose $0 \preceq A \preceq B$ and $0 \preceq C \preceq D$. Then $A C \preceq B D$.

Proof.
5. Note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
|A B|_{e} & =\left(\left|\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{i k} b_{k j}\right|\right) \\
& \preceq\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n}\left|a_{i k}\right|\left|b_{k j}\right|\right) \\
& =|A|_{e}|B|_{e}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proposition 244. Say $A \in M_{n}$. Then $\rho(A) \leq \rho\left(|A|_{e}\right)$.
Proof. Take

$$
\|B\|_{2}=\left(\sum\left|b_{i j}\right|^{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}
$$

Then this is a matrix norm, and $\left\||B|_{e}\right\|_{2}=\|B\|_{2}$. Also $\left|A^{n}\right|_{e} \preceq|A|_{e}^{n}$. So

$$
\left\|A^{n}\right\|_{2}=\left\|\left|A^{n}\right|_{e}\right\|_{2} \leq\left\||A|_{e}^{n}\right\|_{2}
$$

So

$$
\rho(A)=\lim _{n}\left\|A^{n}\right\|_{2}^{\frac{1}{n}} \leq \lim _{n}\left\||A|_{e}^{n}\right\|_{2}^{\frac{1}{n}}=\rho\left(|A|_{e}\right)
$$

Proposition 244
Theorem 245. Suppose $A, B \in M_{n}$. Suppose $|A|_{e} \preceq B$. Then $\rho(A) \leq \rho\left(|A|_{e}\right) \leq \rho(B)$.
Proof. We showed that $\rho(A) \leq \rho\left(|A|_{e}\right)$. But $|A|_{e}^{n} \preceq B^{n}$ implies that $\left\||A|_{e}^{n}\right\|_{2} \leq\left\|B^{n}\right\|_{2}$. So

$$
\rho\left(|A|_{e}\right)=\lim _{n}\left\||A|_{e}^{n}\right\|_{2}^{\frac{1}{n}} \leq \lim _{n}\left\|B^{n}\right\|_{2}^{\frac{1}{n}}=\rho(B)
$$

Corollary 246. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ with $0 \preceq A$. Then

1. For all $S \subseteq\{1, \ldots, n\}$ we have $\rho(A[S, S]) \leq \rho(A)$.
2. $\max \left\{a_{11}, \ldots, a_{n n}\right\} \leq \rho(A)$.
3. If there is $i$ such that $a_{i i} \neq 0$, then $\rho(A)>0$.

Proof.

1. We may assume $A$ takes the form

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A[S, S] & B \\
C & D
\end{array}\right)
$$

But then

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A[S, S] & 0 \\
0 & 0
\end{array}\right) \preceq A
$$

So

$$
\rho(A[S, S])=\rho\left(\begin{array}{cc}
A[S, S] & 0 \\
0 & 0
\end{array}\right) \leq \rho(A)
$$

2. Note that $a_{i i}=A[\{i\},\{i\}]$. So $a_{i i}=\left|a_{i i}\right|=\rho(A[\{i\},\{i\}]) \leq \rho(A)$. So $\max \left\{a_{11}, \ldots, a_{n n}\right\} \leq \rho(A)$.
3. $0<\max \left\{a_{11}, \ldots, a_{n n}\right\} \leq \rho(A)$.

Corollary 246
Proposition 247. For $x \in \mathbb{C}^{n}$, let

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|x\|_{1} & =\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left|x_{j}\right| \\
\|x\|_{\infty} & =\max \left\{\left|x_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|x_{n}\right|\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then for $A \in M_{n}$, the induced operator norms are

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \|A\|_{1}=\max _{j}\left\{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|a_{i j}\right|\right\} \\
& \|A\|_{\infty}=\max _{i}\left\{\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left|a_{i j}\right|\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Both of these are matrix norms.
Proof. Let $\|x\|_{1}=1$. Let $A=\left[C_{1}|\cdots| C_{n}\right]$. Let $C_{k}$ be a column with $\left\|C_{k}\right\|_{1}$ maximum. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|A x\|_{1} & =\left\|x_{1} C_{1}+\cdots+x_{n} C_{n}\right\| \\
& \leq\left|x_{1}\right|\left\|C_{1}\right\|_{1}+\cdots+\left|x_{n}\right|\left\|C_{n}\right\| \\
& \leq\left|x_{1}\right|\left\|C_{k}\right\|_{1}+\cdots+\left|x_{n}\right|\left\|C_{k}\right\|_{1} \\
& =\left\|C_{k}\right\|_{1}
\end{aligned}
$$

So $\|A\|_{1} \leq \max \left\{\left\|C_{1}\right\|_{1}, \ldots,\left\|C_{n}\right\|_{1}\right\}$. For equality, let $x=e_{k}$. Then $\|x\|_{1}=1$ and $A x=C_{k}$. So $\|A\|_{1} \geq\left\|C_{k}\right\|_{1}$ for all $k$. So $\|A\|_{1} \geq \max \left\{\left\|C_{1}\right\|_{1}, \ldots,\left\|C_{n}\right\|_{1}\right\}$. So $\|A\|_{1}=\max \left\{\left\|C_{1}\right\|_{1}, \ldots,\left\|C_{n}\right\|_{1}\right\}$.

The case $\|\cdot \cdot\|_{\infty}$ is similar.
$\square$ Proposition 247
Corollary 248. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then $\rho(A) \leq \min \left\{\|A\|_{1},\|A\|_{\infty}\right\}$.
Corollary 249. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ with $0 \preceq A$.

1. If

$$
\sum_{j} a_{i j}=\|A\|_{\infty}
$$

for all $i$, then $\rho(A)=\|A\|_{\infty}$.
2. If

$$
\sum_{i} a_{i j}=\|A\|_{1}
$$

for all $j$, then $\rho(A)=\|A\|_{1}$.
Proof.

1. Let $e=(1, \ldots, 1)^{t}$. Then

$$
(A e)_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j}=\|A\|_{\infty}
$$

So $A e=\|A\|_{\infty} e$. So $\|A\|_{\infty} \in \sigma(A)$. So $\|A\|_{\infty} \leq \rho(A) \leq\|A\|_{\infty}$. So $\|A\|_{\infty}=\rho(A)$.
Remark 250. In this case we have $\|A\|_{\infty} \leq\|A\|_{1}$.
2. Similar: note that $e^{t} A=\|A\|_{1} d^{t}$. So $\|A\|_{1} \in \sigma\left(A^{t}\right)=\sigma(A)$. So $\|A\| \leq \rho(A) \leq\|A\|_{1}$.

Remark 251. In this case we have $\|A\|_{1} \leq\|A\|_{\infty}$.

Theorem 252. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ with $0 \preceq A$. Then

$$
\min _{i} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} \leq \rho(A) \leq \max _{i} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j}
$$

and

$$
\min _{j} \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{i j} \leq \rho(A) \leq \max _{j} \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{i j}
$$

Proof. The second pair of inequalities follows from the first pair applied to $A^{t}$, since $\rho(A)=\rho\left(A^{t}\right)$. It remains to prove the first pair.

Right-hand inequality By Proposition 247, we have

$$
\rho(A) \leq\|A\|_{1}=\max _{i} \sum_{j=1}^{n}\left|a_{i j}\right|
$$

Alternatively, we can use Gersgorin disks.

## Left-hand inequality Let

$$
\alpha=\min _{i} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i, j}
$$

If $\alpha=0$ then there is nothing to prove. Suppose then that $\alpha \neq 0$. Define $B \in M_{n}$ by

$$
b_{i, j}=\frac{\alpha}{\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j}} a_{i, j}
$$

Then $0 \leq b_{i, j} \leq a_{i, j}$; so $0 \preceq B \preceq A$. So $\rho(B) \leq \rho(A)$. But

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{n} b_{i, j}=\alpha
$$

for all $i$. So, letting $e=(1, \ldots, 1)$, we see $B e=\alpha e$; so $\alpha \leq \rho(B)$. So $\alpha \leq \rho(A)$.

Corollary 253. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ with $0 \preceq A$. Then

$$
\sup _{0 \prec x} \min _{i} \frac{1}{x_{i}} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j} \leq \rho(A) \leq \inf _{0 \prec x} \max _{i} \frac{1}{x_{i}} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j}
$$

and

$$
\sup _{0 \prec x} \min _{j} \frac{1}{x_{i}} \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{i} \leq \rho(A) \leq \inf _{0 \prec x} \max _{j} \frac{1}{x_{j}} \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{i}
$$

Proof. Again, suffices to do the first pair of inequalities. Let $D=\operatorname{diag}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$. Then $\rho\left(D^{-1} A D\right)=\rho(A)$. Apply the above theorem to $D^{-1} A D=\left(\frac{1}{x_{i}} a_{i j} x_{j}\right)$.

Corollary 253
Corollary 254. Suppose $0 \preceq A$ and $0 \prec x$. If $\alpha, \beta \geq 0$ satisfy $\alpha x \preceq A x \preceq \beta x$, then $\alpha \leq \rho(A) \leq \beta$. Furthermore, if $\alpha x \prec A x \prec \beta x$, then $\alpha<\rho(A)<\beta$.

Proof. For each $i$ we have

$$
\alpha x_{i} \leq \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j} \leq \beta x_{i}
$$

and thus

$$
\alpha \leq \frac{1}{x_{i}} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j} \leq \beta
$$

The result then follows by the previous corollary.
Corollary 254
Corollary 255. Suppose $0 \preceq A$ and $0 \prec x$ with $A x=\lambda x$. Then

1. $\lambda=\rho(A)$.
2. 

$$
\max _{x \succ 0} \min _{i} \frac{1}{x_{i}} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j}=\rho(A)=\min _{x \succ 0} \max _{i} \frac{1}{x_{i}} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j}
$$

Proof. 1. $\lambda x=A x$, so $\lambda x \preceq A x \preceq \lambda x$. So, by the previous corollary, we have $\lambda \leq \rho(A) \leq \lambda$, and $\lambda=\rho(A)$.
2. For all $i$ we have

$$
\lambda x_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j}
$$

So

$$
\lambda=\frac{1}{x_{i}} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j}
$$

for all $i$, The result then follows.

Theorem 256. Suppose $0 \preceq A$. Then there is $0 \prec x$ such that $A x=\rho(A) x$.
Proof. We know $\rho(A)>0$. Also, if $0 \preceq x$ with $x \neq 0$, then $0 \prec A x$. So if $0 \preceq x$ and $A x=\rho(A) x$, then $0 \prec x$.
Let $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$ satisfy $|\lambda|=\rho(A)$. So there is $y \neq 0$ such that $A y=\lambda y$. Let $x=|y|_{e}$. Then

$$
(A x)_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j}\left|y_{j}\right|>0
$$

So $0 \prec A x$. But we also have

$$
(A x)_{i}=\left(A|y|_{e}\right)_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j}\left|y_{j}\right| \geq\left|\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} y_{j}\right|=\left|\lambda y_{i}\right|=|\lambda|\left|y_{i}\right|=|\lambda| x_{i}=\rho(A) x_{i}
$$

So $|\lambda| x \preceq A x$, and $\rho(A) x \preceq A x$. Now, let $w=A x-\rho(A) x$. If $w=0$, the theorem is proven. Assume then that $w \neq 0$. But $0 \prec A w=A(A x)-\rho(A)(A x)$; so $\rho(A)(A x) \prec A(A x)$. If we then let $\alpha=\rho(A)$ and apply Corollary 254, we get that $\alpha<\rho(A)$, a contradiction. So $w=0$, and $A x=\rho(A) x$.
$\square$ Theorem 256
Remark 257. The proof showed that if $A y=\lambda y$ with $|\lambda|=\rho(A)$ and $x=|y|_{e}$, then $A x=\rho(A) x$.
Theorem 258 (Perron). Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ with $0 \prec A$. Then there is a unique $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ such that

- Each $x_{i} \geq 0$.
- $x_{1}+\cdots+x_{n}=1$.
- $A x=\rho(A) x$.

Proof. By above there is $\widetilde{x}=\left(\widetilde{x}_{1}, \ldots, \widetilde{x}_{n}\right)$ with each $\widetilde{x}_{i} \geq 0$ and $A \widetilde{x}=\rho(A) \widetilde{x}$ such that if $r=\widetilde{x}_{1}+\cdots+\widetilde{x}_{n}$ and $x=\frac{1}{r} \widetilde{x}$ then $A x=\rho(A) x$. So there exists one such vector.

Suppose now that $y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)$ satisfies each $y_{i} \geq 0, y_{1}+\cdots+y_{n}=1$, and $A y=\rho(A) y$. Let

$$
\beta=\min _{i} y_{i} x_{i}^{-1}
$$

Then each $y_{i}-\beta x_{i} \geq 0$; so, if $w=y-\beta x$, then $w \geq 0$, and one entry of $w$ is 0 . Then, if we had $w \neq 0$, we have $0 \prec A w=A y-\beta A x=\rho(A)(y-\beta x)=\rho(A) w$, contradicting our statement that $w$ has 0 as an entry. So $w=0$, and $y=\beta x$. So $1=y_{1}+\cdots+y_{n}=\beta\left(x_{1}+\cdots+x_{n}\right)=\beta$. So $y=x$. Theorem 258

Corollary 259. Suppose $0 \prec A$. Then $\rho(A)$ is a root of $p_{A}(t)$ of geometric multiplicity exactly 1 .
Proof. Follows from theorem above. Corollary 259

Question 260 (Challenge). What about the algebraic multiplicity?
Solution:
Theorem 261 (1.4.12). Suppose $A \in M_{n}, \lambda \in \mathbb{C}, x \neq 0, y \neq 0, A x=\lambda x$, and $y^{*} A=\lambda y^{*}$.

1. If $\lambda$ has algebraic multiplicity 1 , then $y^{*} x \neq 0$.
2. Assume $\lambda$ has geometric mult 1. Then it has algebraic multiplicity 1 if and only if $y^{*} x \neq 0$.

## Proof.

1. By Schur, we have

$$
\widetilde{A}=U^{*} A U=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\lambda & * \\
0 & B
\end{array}\right)
$$

and $x=e_{1}$. Suppose $y^{*} x=y^{*} e_{1}=0$; then $y^{*}=\left(0, \widetilde{y}^{*}\right)$. Then

$$
(0, \lambda \widetilde{y})=\lambda y^{*}=y^{*} \widetilde{A}=(0, \widetilde{y})\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\lambda & * \\
0 & B
\end{array}\right)=(0, \widetilde{y} B)
$$

so $\lambda \in \sigma(B)$. So $(t-\lambda) \mid p_{B}(t)$. So $(t-\lambda)^{2} \mid p_{A}(t)=(t-\lambda) p_{B}(t)$. So $\lambda$ has algebraic multiplicity $>1$.
2.
$(\Longrightarrow) B y(1)$.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ Show $p_{A}^{\prime}(\lambda)=\gamma y^{*} x$ for $\gamma \neq 0$; this uses the adjugate. Thus, if $p_{A}(t)=(t-\lambda)^{2} q(t)$, then $p_{A}^{\prime}(\lambda)=0$; so $(t-\lambda)$ only occurs to the first power in $p_{A}(t)$.

Definition 262. Suppose $0 \prec A$. We proved that there is a unique $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ with each $x_{i}>0$ and $x_{1}+\cdots+x_{n}=1$ such that $A x=\rho(A) x$. This vector is called the right Perron vector for $A$. Since $y^{t} A=\rho(A) y^{t}$ if and only if $A^{t} y=\rho(A) y^{t}$, we know there is $y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)$ with each $y_{i}>0$ such that $y^{t} A=\rho(A) y^{t}$. Thus there is a unique $y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)$ such that

1. $y^{t} A=\rho(A) y^{t}$
2. $y_{i}>0$ for all $i$
3. $y_{1} x_{1}+\cdots+y_{n} x_{n}=1$

This is called the left Perron vector for $A$.
Corollary 263. Suppose $0 \prec A$. Then $\rho(A)$ is of algebraic multiplicity 1 .
Proof. We know $\rho(A)$ is of geometric multiplicity 1. Apply 1.4.12, part (2).Corollary 263

This solves Question 260.
Theorem 264 (Perron). Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ with $0 \prec A$. Then

1. $\rho(A)>0$
2. $\rho(A)$ is an eigenvalue of geometric multiplicity one.
3. There is a unique $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ with each $x_{i}>0$ and $x_{1}+\cdots+x_{m}=1$ such that $A x=\rho(A) x$.
4. There is a unique $y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)$ with each $y_{i}>0$ and $y_{1}+\cdots+y_{n}=1$ such that $y^{t} A=\rho(A) y^{t}$.
5. For all $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$ with $\lambda \neq \rho(A)$ we have $|\lambda|<\rho(A)$.

Proof.
(1)-(3) Done already.
(4) Apply (3) to $A^{t}$.
(5) Suppose $\lambda \in \sigma(A)$ with $|\lambda|=\rho(A)$ and $\lambda \neq \rho(A)$. Pick $x \neq 0$ such that $A x=\lambda x$. Then $\rho(A)|x|_{e}=$ $|\lambda x|_{e}=|A x|_{e} \preceq A|x|_{e}$. Let $w=A|x|_{e}-\rho(A)|x|_{e} \succeq 0$. If $w \neq 0$ then $0 \prec A w=A\left(A|x|_{e}\right)-\rho(A) A|x|_{e} ;$ so $\rho(A)\left(A|x|_{e}\right) \prec A\left(A|x|_{e}\right)$; so $\rho(A)<\rho(A)$ by a previous theorem, a contradiction. So $w=0$ and $A|x|_{e}=\rho(A)|x|_{e}$. Returning to the inequality, we find

$$
\rho(A)|x|_{e}=|\lambda x|_{e}=|A x|_{e} \leq A|x|_{e}=\rho(A)|x|_{e}
$$

So $|A x|=A|x|$, and

$$
\left|\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j}\right|=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j}\left|x_{j}\right|
$$

So the $x_{j}$ are all collinear in $\mathbb{C}$; so there is $\theta$ such that $\exp (i \theta) x_{j}=\left|x_{j}\right|$ for all $j$. But then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho(A) \exp (i \theta) x & =\rho(A)|x| \\
& =A|x| \\
& =A(\exp (i \theta) x) \\
& =\exp (i \theta) A x \\
& =\exp (i \theta) \lambda x
\end{aligned}
$$

So $\rho(A)=\lambda$, contradicting our assumption that $\rho(A) \neq \lambda$. So $\rho(A)=\lambda$. Theorem 264

Theorem 265. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ with $0 \preceq A$. Then $\rho(A)$ is an eigenvalue of $A$ with a non-negative eigenvector.

Proof. Let $J_{n} \in M_{n}$ be the matrix of all ones; set $A_{k}=A+\frac{1}{k} J_{n}$. So $0 \prec A_{k}$. So, by Perron's theorem there is $x_{k}=\left(x_{1 k}, \ldots, x_{n k}\right)$ with $x_{j k} \geq 0$ and $x_{1 k}+\cdots+x_{n k}=1$ such that $A_{k} x_{k}=\rho\left(A_{k}\right) x_{k}$. These come from a bounded set; thus there is $k_{\ell}$ such that $\left(x_{k_{\ell}}: \ell \in \mathbb{N}\right) \rightarrow y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)$. Then each $y_{j} \geq 0$ and $y_{1}+\cdots+y_{n}=1$. Furthermore, we have $\left(A_{k_{\ell}}: \ell \in \mathbb{N}\right) \rightarrow A$; so

$$
A y=\lim _{\ell \rightarrow \infty} A_{k_{\ell}} x_{k_{\ell}}=\lim _{\ell \rightarrow \infty} \rho\left(A_{k_{\ell}}\right) x_{k_{\ell}}
$$

So

$$
\lim _{\ell \rightarrow \infty} \rho\left(A_{k_{\ell}}\right)=\mu \geq 0
$$

and $A y=\mu y$. So $0 \leq \mu \leq \rho(A)$. But $A \preceq A_{k}$; so $\rho(A) \leq \rho\left(A_{k}\right)$, and

$$
\rho(A) \leq \lim _{\ell \rightarrow \infty} \rho\left(A_{k_{\ell}}\right)=\mu
$$

So $\mu=\rho(A)$, and $A y=\mu y$ for $y \succeq 0$.
$\square$ Theorem 265

### 9.1 Irreducible non-negative matrices

Definition 266. A matrix $A \in M_{n}$ is reducible if there is a permutation matrix $P$ such that

$$
P^{t} A P=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
B & C \\
0 & D
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $B \in M_{r}$. We say $A$ is irreducible if $A$ is not reducible.
Definition 267. Given a vertex set $\{1, \ldots, n\}$ and a non-empty $E \subseteq\{1, \ldots, n\} \times\{1, \ldots, n\}$, we think of there being a path of length 1 from $i$ to $j$ if and only if $(i, j) \in E$. This is what we mean by a directed graph (with loops).

Definition 268. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ with $0 \preceq A$. We define $\Gamma(A)$, the directed graph of $A$, to have $n$ vertices set and edge set $E=\left\{(i, j): a_{i, j} \neq 0\right\}$.
Definition 269. Given a directed graph $\Gamma$ with edge set $E$, we say that there is a path of length $k$ from $i$ to $j$ if there is $\left(i, i_{1}\right),\left(i_{1}, i_{2}\right), \ldots,\left(i_{k-2}, i_{k-1}\right),\left(i_{k-1}, j\right) \in E$. We say that $\Gamma$ is path-connected if given any $i$ and $j$ there is a path from $i$ to $j$.

Proposition 270. Suppose $0 \preceq A$. Then $\left(A^{m}\right)_{i, j} \neq 0$ if and only if there is a path of length $m$ from $i$ to $j$ in $\Gamma(A)$.

Proof. We apply induction on $m$. Assume the proposition holds for $m$. Then $\left(A^{m+1}\right)_{i, j} \neq 0$ if and only if there is $k$ such that $\left(A^{m}\right)_{i, k} \neq 0$ and $A_{k, j} \neq 0$. By the induction hypothesis, this holds if and only if there is $k$ and a path of length $m$ from $i$ to $k$ and a path of length 1 from $k$ to $j$; but this is just the definition of there being a path of length $m$ from $i$ to $j$.

So, by induction, the proposition holds.
Proposition 270
Proposition 271. Suppose $\Gamma$ is a directed graph on $n$ vertices. If there is a path from $i$ to $j$ with $i \neq j$, then there is a directed path of length $\leq n-1$ from $i$ to $j$.

Proof. Suppose you have a longer path. Then it passes through some vertex twice. Then you can shorten it.
$\qquad$
Theorem 272. Suppose $A \in M_{n}$ with $0 \preceq A$. Then the following are equivalent:

1. A is irreducible.
2. $\Gamma(A)$ is path-connected.
3. $0 \prec(I+A)^{n-1}$.

Proof.
(3) $\Longrightarrow$ (1) Suppose $A$ is reducible. Then, after permutation, we have

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
B & X \\
0 & C
\end{array}\right)
$$

So

$$
(I+A)^{n-1}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I+B & X \\
0 & I+C)^{n-1}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
(I+B)^{n-1} & * \\
0 & (I+C)^{n-1}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and (3) fails.
$(1) \Longrightarrow(2)$ Suppose $\Gamma(A)$ is not path-connected. After renumbering, we can say that there is no path from $n$ to 1 . Renumbering, let $\{2, \ldots, r\}$ be the vertices with a path to 1 ; let $\{r+1, \ldots, n\}$ be the vertices with no path to 1. Suppose for contradiction that $a_{i, j} \neq 0$ for some $r+1 \leq i \leq n$ and some $1 \leq j \leq r$. Then there is a path from $i$ to $j$. But there is a path from $j$ to 1 . So there is a path from $i$ to 1 , a contradiction. So $a_{i, j}=0$ whenever $r+1 \leq i \leq n$ and $1 \leq j \leq r$. So

$$
P^{t} A P=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
* & * \\
0 & *
\end{array}\right)
$$

so $A$ is reducible.
$\mathbf{( 2 )} \Longrightarrow \mathbf{( 3 )}$ For all $i \neq j$ we know there is $m \leq n-1$ and a path of length $m$ from $i$ to $j$. So $\left(A^{m}\right)_{i, j} \neq 0$. So $I+A+A^{2}+\cdots+A^{n-1} \succ 0$. So $(I+A)^{n-1}=I+\binom{n}{1} A+\binom{n}{2} A^{2}+\cdots+A^{n-1} \succ 0$.

Theorem 272
Theorem 273 (Perron-Frobenius). Suppose $n \geq 2$; suppose $A \in M_{n}$ is irreducible with $0 \preceq A$. Then:

1. $\rho(A)>0$.
2. $\rho(A)$ is an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity 1 .
3. There is a unique $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ with $x_{1}+\cdots+x_{m}=1$ such that $A x=\rho(A) x$. Moreover, $0 \prec x$.
4. There is a unique $y \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ with $y \cdot x=1$ and $y^{T} A=\rho(A) y^{T}$. Moreover, $0 \prec y$.

Proof.

1. We know

$$
\min _{i} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} \leq \rho(A)
$$

If this minimum is 0 , then one row is all 0 ; we permute so that this is the last row. Then

$$
P^{t} A P=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
* & * \\
0 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

so $A$ is reducible, a contradiction. So

$$
\min _{i} \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} \neq 0
$$

So $0<\rho(A)$.
2. Since $0 \preceq A$, we have that there is $0 \preceq x$ with $x \neq 0$ such that $A x=\rho(A) x$. So

$$
(I+A)^{n-1} x=(1+\rho(A))^{n-1} x
$$

But

$$
\rho\left((I+A)^{n-1}\right)=\sup \left\{\left|(1+\lambda)^{n-1}\right|: \lambda \in \sigma(A)\right\}=(1+\rho(A))^{n-1}
$$

But $A$ is irreducible; so $0 \prec(I+A)^{n-1}$. So $x$ is the Perron vector and $(1+\rho(A))^{n-1}$ is an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity 1 for $(I+A)^{n-1}$.
Suppose for contradiction that $\rho(A)$ has algebraic multiplicity $\geq 2$ for $A$. Then, by Schur, we have

$$
U^{*} A U=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\rho(A) & * & * & * \\
& \rho(A) & * & * \\
& & * & * \\
0 & & & \ddots
\end{array}\right)=T
$$

is upper triangular. But then

$$
U^{*}(I+A)^{n-1} U=(I+T)^{n-1}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
(1+\rho(A))^{n-1} & * & * & * \\
& (1+\rho(A))^{n-1} & * & * \\
& & * & * \\
0 & & & \ddots
\end{array}\right)
$$

So $(1+\rho(A))^{n-1}$ is of algebraic multiplicity at leats 2 in $(I+A)^{n-1}$, contradicting Perron's theorem. So $\rho(A)$ has algebraic multiplicity 1 in $A$.
3. We know $\rho(A)$ has algebraic multiplicity 1 ; so $\rho(A)$ is of geometric multplicity 1 . So the $\rho(A)$ eigenspace is 1-dimensional. So $A w=\rho(A) w$ implies $w=\alpha x$, where $x$ is obtained as in (2). So there is a unique multiple to make the coordinates add to 1.
4. Well, $\left(I+A^{T}\right)^{n-1}=\left((I+A)^{n-1}\right)^{T}$. So $A^{T}$ is irreducible. Applying (2) and (3) to $A^{T}$, we get that the dimension of the eigenspace for $\rho(A)$ is also 1 for $A^{T}$, and that $A^{T} \widetilde{y}=\rho(A) \widetilde{y}$ has one solution given by the Perron vector for $A^{T}$; so $0 \prec \widetilde{y}$ and any vector $w$ satisfying $A^{T} w=\rho(A) w$ satisfies $w=\alpha \widetilde{y}$. Pick the unique $\alpha$ such that $(\alpha \widetilde{y}) \cdot x=1$; let $y=\alpha \widetilde{y}$.

### 9.2 Stochastic and doubly stochastic matrices

Definition 274. We say $A \in M_{n}$ is (row-)stochastic if $0 \preceq A$ and

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j}=1
$$

for all $i$. We say $A$ is column-stochastic if $0 \preceq A$ and

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{i j}=1
$$

for all $j$. We say $A$ is doubly stochastic if it is row-stochastic and column-stochastic.
Remark 275. Let $e=(1, \ldots, 1)$. Then

1. $A$ is row-stochastic if and only if $0 \preceq A$ and $A e=e$.
2. $A$ is column-stochastic if and only if $0 \preceq A$ and $e^{T} A=e^{T}$.
3. $A$ is doubly stochastic if and only if $0 \preceq A, A e=e$, and $e^{T} A=e^{T}$.
4. Suppose $A_{1}, A_{2}$ are stochastic (in one of the three senses). Suppose $t_{1}+t_{2}=1$ with $0 \leq t_{1}$ and $0 \leq t_{2}$. Then $t_{1} A_{1}+t_{2} A_{2}$ is stochastic in the same sense.
5. The set of stochastic matrices (in any of the three senses) is convex and compact.
6. Every permutation matrix $P_{\sigma}$ is doubly stochastic.

Lemma 276. Suppose $A=\left(a_{i j}\right) \in M_{n}$ is doubly stochastic with $A \neq I$. Then there is a permutation $\sigma:\{1, \ldots, n\} \rightarrow\{1, \ldots, n\}$ such that $a_{1, \sigma(1)} \ldots a_{n, \sigma(n)}>0$.
Proof. Suppose otherwise. Let $\left(b_{i, j}\right)=t I-A$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
p_{A}(t) & =\operatorname{det}\left(\left(b_{i j}\right)\right) \\
& =\sum_{\sigma} \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma) \prod_{i=1}^{n} b_{i, \sigma(i)} \\
& =\left(t-a_{11}\right) \ldots\left(t-a_{n n}\right)+\sum_{\sigma \neq \mathrm{id}} \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma) \prod_{i=1}^{n} b_{i, \sigma(i)}
\end{aligned}
$$

For fixed $\sigma$, we have

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{n} b_{i, \sigma(i)}=\prod_{\sigma(i)=i}\left(t-a_{i i}\right) \cdot \prod_{\sigma(i) \neq i}
$$

which is 0 , since we may preapply a permutation to $A$ so that the diagonal entries of $A$ are non-zero.
Then $p_{A}(t)=\left(t-a_{11}\right) \ldots\left(t-a_{n n}\right)$. But $A$ is stochastic; so 1 is an eigenvalue. So there is $i$ such that $a_{i i}=1 ;$ say $a_{11}=1$. Then

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & A_{1}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then $A_{1}$ is doubly stochastic. Similarly, we find $i$ with $2 \leq i \leq n$ such that $a_{i i}=1$. Iterating, we find $A=I$.
$\square$ Lemma 276
Lemma 277. Suppose $A=\left(a_{i j}\right) \in M_{n}$ is doubly stochastic. If at most $n$ entries of $A$ are non-zero, then $A$ is a permutation matrix.
Proof. If $A=I$, then we are done. Suppose then that $A \neq I$. Then there is $\sigma$ such that $a_{1, \sigma(1)} \ldots a_{n, \sigma(n)}>0$. This is already $n$ non-zero entries. So the only non-zero entries of $A$ are $a_{i, \sigma(i)}$. So $A$ has exactly one non-zero entry in each row and column. So $a_{i, \sigma(i)}=1$ for all $i$, and $A$ is a permutation matrix.
$\square$ Lemma 277
Theorem 278 (Birkhoff). Suppose $A \in M_{n}$. Then $A$ is doubly stochastic if and only if there are permutations $P_{1}, \ldots, P_{N}$ and $t_{i} \geq 0$ with $t_{1}+\cdots+t_{N}=1$ such that $A=t_{1} P_{1}+\cdots+t_{N} P_{N}$. Moreover, one may take $N \leq n^{2}-n+1$.

Proof.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ Clear.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ If $A=I$, then we are done. Suppose then that $A \neq I$. Pick $\sigma$ such that $a_{1, \sigma(1)} \ldots a_{n, \sigma(n)} \neq 0$. Let $\alpha_{1}=\min \left\{a_{1, \sigma(1)}, \ldots, a_{n, \sigma(n)}\right\}$. Then

$$
A_{1}=\frac{1}{1-\alpha_{1}} A-\alpha_{1} P_{\sigma_{1}}
$$

is doubly stochastic with $A=\alpha_{1} P_{\sigma_{1}}+\left(1-\alpha_{1}\right) A_{1}$, and $A_{1}$ is 0 in at least 1 entry. If $A_{1}=I$, then we are done. Else there is $\sigma_{2}$ such that $a_{1, \sigma_{2}(1)}^{\prime} \ldots a_{n, \sigma_{2}(n)}^{\prime}>0$. Then $A_{1}-\alpha_{2} P_{\sigma_{2}} \succeq 0$. Then

$$
A_{2}=\frac{1}{1-\alpha_{2}}\left(A_{1}-\alpha_{2} P_{\sigma_{2}}\right)
$$

is doubly stochastic with $A_{1}=\alpha_{2} P_{\sigma_{2}}+\left(1-\alpha_{2}\right) A_{2}$; so

$$
A=\alpha_{1} P_{\sigma_{1}}+\alpha_{2}\left(1-\alpha_{1}\right) P_{\sigma_{2}}+\left(1-\alpha_{2}\right)\left(1-\alpha_{1}\right) A_{2}
$$

Also $A_{2}$ is 0 in at least 2 entries. Continuing $N$ times, we find

$$
A=\alpha_{1} P_{\sigma_{1}}+\cdots+\alpha_{N-1} P_{\sigma_{N-1}}+\beta A_{N-1}
$$

Then $A_{N-1}$ is doubly stochastic and has $N-1$ entries of 0 . If $N-1 \geq n^{2}-n$, then $N \geq n^{2}-n+1$, so $A_{N-1}$ is a permutation matrix, and we're done.

Theorem 279 (Birkhoff). The premutation matrices are the extreme points of the convex set of doubly stochastic matrices.

Remark 280. Closed convex sets in finite dimensions are always the convex hull of their extreme points.
Proof of Theorem 279.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Suppose $P$ is a permutation matrix; we wish to prove that $P$ is an extreme point. Suppose $P=t A+(1-t) B$ for $0<t<1$ with $A, B$ doubly stochastic. Then $p_{i j}=t a_{i j}+(1-t) b_{i j}$ with $0 \preceq A$ and $0 \preceq B$. So if $p_{i j}=0$, then $a_{i j}=b_{i j}=0$. So $A$ and $B$ are non-zero for at most 1 entry in each row and column. Hence $A=B=P$.
$(\Longleftarrow)$ Suppose $A$ is doubly stochastic and not a permutation matrix. We wish to show that $A$ is not an extreme point; i.e. there are $A_{+}$and $A_{-}$such that $A=\frac{1}{2} A_{+}+\frac{1}{2} A_{-}$with $A_{+} \neq A$ and $A_{-} \neq A$. Since $A$ is not a permutation matrix, there is some row $i_{1}$ such that $A$ is non-zero in 2 entries of the $i_{1}$ row; say $a_{i_{1}, j_{1}} \neq 0$ and $a_{i_{1}, j_{2}} \neq 0$; then $0<a_{i_{1}, j_{1}}<1$ and $0<a_{i_{1}, j_{2}}<1$. Now, in the $j_{2}$ column there must be another non-zero entry; say $0<a_{i_{2}, j_{2}}<1$. Continue until we return to an entry in column $j_{1}$; we get $\left(i_{1}, j_{1}\right),\left(i_{1}, j_{2}\right),\left(i_{2}, j_{2}\right), \ldots,\left(i_{k}, j_{1}\right)$, with all of these entries in $(0,1)$. Let $B=E_{\left(i_{1}, j_{1}\right)}-E_{\left(i_{1}, j_{2}\right)}+E_{\left(i_{2}, j_{2}\right)}-\ldots$

Claim 281. Each row and column of $B$ sums to 0 .

Proof. Picture.Claim 281

Let $\alpha=\min \left\{a_{i_{1}, j_{1}}, \ldots, a_{i_{k}, j_{1}}\right\}>0$. Let

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{1}=A-\alpha B \\
& A_{2}=A+\alpha B
\end{aligned}
$$

Then each row and column of $A_{1}, A_{2}$ still sums to 1 . By our choice of $\alpha$ we have $0 \preceq A$ and $0 \preceq A_{2}$. So $A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ are doubly stochastic. But $A=\frac{1}{2} A_{1}+\frac{1}{2} A_{2}$. So $A$ is not extreme.

Theorem 279
Corollary 282. Suppose $A \neq I$ is doubly stochastic. Then there is a permutation $\sigma \neq$ id such that $a_{1, \sigma(1)} \ldots a_{n, \sigma(n)}>0$.

Proof. By the theorem and the remark, we have

$$
A=t_{1} P_{\sigma_{1}}+\cdots+t_{m} P_{\sigma_{m}}
$$

where each $t_{i}>0$ and $t_{1}+\cdots+t_{m}=1$. Since $A \neq I$ there is at least one $\sigma_{i_{0}} \neq \mathrm{id}$. So $a_{i, \sigma_{i_{0}}(i)} \geq t_{i_{0}} \cdot 1>0$. So $a_{1, \sigma_{i_{0}}(1)} \ldots a_{n, \sigma_{i_{0}}(n)}>0$. Corollary 282

## 10 Matroids

Definition 283 (H. Whitney (1935)). Suppose $X$ is a (finite) set. A matroid on $X$ is a $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{P}(X)$ satisfying

1. $\emptyset \in \mathcal{I}$.
2. If $B \in \mathcal{I}$ and $A \subseteq B$ then $A \in \mathcal{I}$.
3. If $A, B \in \mathcal{I}$ and $|A|<|B|$ then there is $b \in B \backslash A$ such that $A \cup\{b\} \in \mathcal{I}$.

Example 284. Suppose $V$ is a vector space with $X \subseteq V$. Given $A \subseteq X$, we define $A \in \mathcal{I}$ if $A$ is linearly independent. Then $\mathcal{I}$ is a matroid on $X$. (1) and (2) are clear; to see (3), note that

$$
\operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{span}(A))=|A|<|B|=\operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{span}(B))
$$

So there is $b \in B$ such that $b \notin \operatorname{span}(A)$, in which case $A \cup\{b\}$ is linearly independent .
Definition 285. Suppose $\mathcal{I}$ is a matroid on $X$; suppose $E \subseteq X$. We define $\operatorname{rank}(E)=\max \{|A|: A \subseteq E, A \in$ I $\}$.

Example 286. Continuing the previous example, we have $\operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{span}(E))$ is the maximum cardinality of a linearly independent subset of $E$, which is just $\operatorname{rank}(E)$.

Theorem 287 (Horn 1955, Rado 1962). Suppose $V$ is a vector space with $X \subseteq V$. Then $X$ can be partitioned into $k$ linearly indepdendent subsets if and only if for all finite $E \subseteq X$ we have

$$
\frac{|E|}{\operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{span}(E))} \leq k
$$

Much later, the same theorem was proven by Rado and collaborators for arbitrary matroids, where $\operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{span}(E))$ is replaced by $\operatorname{rank}(E)$.

Proof.
$(\Longrightarrow)$ Suppose $X=A_{1} \cup \cdots \cup A_{k}$ where the $A_{i}$ are pairwise disjoint and linearly independent. Suppose $E \subseteq X$. Then

$$
E=\left(E \cap A_{1}\right) \cup \cdots \cup\left(E \cap A_{k}\right)
$$

where the $E \cap A_{i}$ are linearly independent. So $\operatorname{dim}\left(\operatorname{span}\left(E \cap A_{i}\right)\right)=\left|E \cap A_{i}\right|$. So

$$
\begin{aligned}
|E| & =\sum_{i=1}^{k}\left|E \cap A_{i}\right| \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{k} \operatorname{dim}\left(\operatorname{span}\left(E \cap A_{i}\right)\right) \\
& \leq \sum_{i=1}^{k} \operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{span}(E)) \\
& =k \operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{span}(E))
\end{aligned}
$$

So

$$
\frac{|E|}{\operatorname{dim}(\operatorname{span}(E))} \leq k
$$Theorem 287

TODO 1. Last lecture.

